

TEENAGE PREGNANCY  
IN SOUTH AFRICA:  
WITH A SPECIFIC FOCUS ON  
SCHOOL-GOING LEARNERS

HSRC RESEARCH SUBJECT

5965



education

Department:  
Education  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA





**SUBMITTED BY**

Dr Saadhna Panday, Dr Monde Makiwane, Chitra Ranchod and Thabo Letsoalo  
Child Youth Family and Social Development  
Human Sciences Research Council  
South Africa

**COMMISSIONED BY**  
UNICEF

**ON BEHALF OF**  
National Department of Education

July 2009

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>EXECUTIVE SUMMARY</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>METHODS</b>	<b>13</b>
<i>Terms of reference</i>	13
Aims	13
<i>Objectives</i>	13
Approach to the study	13
<i>Literature review</i>	13
<i>Secondary data analysis</i>	13
Definitions	14
<b>TRENDS IN TEENAGE FERTILITY</b>	<b>15</b>
<i>Literature review</i>	15
<i>International</i>	15
<i>National</i>	16
Fertility history in South Africa	16
Teenage fertility in relation to overall fertility	16
<i>Case A: Trends in fertility in the Eastern Cape</i>	16
<i>Case B: South African fertility trends, 1980-2007</i>	17
<i>Lessons from analysis of trends in fertility</i>	18
Differentials	18
Age	19
Location	20
Population group	20
Education	21
Secondary analysis	21
EMIS data	21
Provincial data	24
Abortion	24
Barriers to legal abortion	25
<b>CONSEQUENCES OF EARLY CHILDBEARING</b>	<b>26</b>
<i>Health consequences</i>	26
<i>Educational and economic consequences</i>	27
<i>Social consequences</i>	27
<b>DETERMINANTS</b>	<b>29</b>
<i>Conceptual framework</i>	29
<i>Literature review</i>	30
<i>Intrapersonal factors</i>	30
Sexual behaviour	30
<i>Sexual experience</i>	30
<i>Sexual partnerships</i>	30
<i>Sexual frequency</i>	30
Age mixing	30
Contraceptive use	30
<i>Knowledge, beliefs and attitudes about contraception</i>	31
Attitudes towards teenage pregnancy	32
Risk perception	33
Substance use	33
Childhood sexual and physical abuse	34
<i>Interpersonal factors</i>	34
Families	34
Family type	34
Parental values and role-modelling	35
Parental style, monitoring and support	35
Parental communication	35
Partners	36
Peers	36

Communities	37
Institutional factors	37
Structural factors	38
Cultural context	38
Socio-economic status and poverty	39
Public policy	40
Secondary analysis	40
Profile of male partners	41
Who are young fathers?	41
Attitudes towards early fatherhood	42
Barriers to teen fatherhood	42
<b>POLICY AND PROGRAMMES</b>	<b>44</b>
Prevention programmes	44
School-based sex education	44
School-based/linked health services	46
Parenting	47
Peer programmes	47
Sexual and reproductive health services	48
Access to family planning services	48
Adolescent-friendly services	49
Termination of pregnancy services	50
Mass media campaigns	50
Community-based interventions	53
Youth development programmes	54
Second chance programmes	54
Flexible school policies	54
What works best for second chance programmes	?
Child support grant	56
<b>CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b>	<b>58</b>
Fertility	58
Abortion	58
Determinants	58
Role of education	59
Young fathers	59
Interventions	59
Recommendations	60
Prevention	60
Sexual risk factors	60
Universal implementation of sex education	60
Targeted interventions for high-risk groups	60
Non-sexual risk factors	61
Interventions to retain girls in school	61
Service learning	61
Second chances	61
Other sectors	61
Communities	61
Health	62
Parents	62
Mass media	62
Scope and coverage of research	62
Fertility	62
EMIS data	62
Determinants	63
Interventions	63
<b>REFERENCES</b>	<b>64</b>
<b>APPENDICES</b>	<b>78</b>
Appendix 1: Literature search strategy	78
Appendix 2: The HSRC 2003 Status of the Youth Survey – Methods	79

## LIST OF TABLES

<b>Table 1:</b> Fertility trends in Transkei by marital status and age, 1980-1994	17
<b>Table 2:</b> Teenage fertility rates (per 1000 women) by population group, 1996-2001	18
<b>Table 3:</b> Adolescent pregnancy and motherhood, South Africa, 1998	19
<b>Table 4:</b> Learner pregnancy rates, 2004-2008	22
<b>Table 5:</b> Learner pregnancy rates per province, 2004-2008	23
<b>Table 6:</b> Selected variables and the proportion of missing data	23
<b>Table 7:</b> Distribution of learner pregnancy by institutional phase	23
<b>Table 8:</b> Distribution of learner pregnancy by level of specialisation	23
<b>Table 9:</b> Distribution of learner pregnancy by school fees	24
<b>Table 10:</b> Distribution of learner pregnancy by school land ownership	24
<b>Table 11:</b> Consequences of early childbearing	26
<b>Table 12:</b> An ecological perspective: levels of influence	29
<b>Table 13:</b> Selected social factors related to early pregnancy among women in SA, 2003	40
<b>Table 14:</b> Selected social factors related to early pregnancy among young men in SA, 2003	41
<b>Table 15:</b> Factors affecting young fathers' well-being and participation in parenting	42
<b>Table 16:</b> Characteristics of effective curriculum-based programmes	45
<b>Table 17:</b> Sources of information related to HIV and AIDS for young people in SA	51
<b>Table 18:</b> Cumulative odds of behaviour change with increased exposure to communication campaigns	53

## LIST OF FIGURES

<b>Figure 1:</b> Births to women aged 15-19 per thousand women, 1990, 2000 and 2005	15
<b>Figure 2:</b> Overall fertility trends in South Africa	16
<b>Figure 3:</b> Trends in teenage fertility, 1980-2007	17
<b>Figure 4:</b> Trends in teenage fertility-Africa Centre Demographic Surveillance System, 1990-2005	18
<b>Figure 5:</b> Pregnancy among 15-19 year olds by age, 2003	19
<b>Figure 6:</b> Percentage of women aged 15-19 who are mothers per province, 1998	20
<b>Figure 7:</b> HIV prevalence by geography type among 15-24 year olds in South Africa, 2003	20
<b>Figure 8:</b> Teenage fertility by population group, 1996-2001	21
<b>Figure 9:</b> Increasing teenage pregnancy rates among those who are not at school	22
<b>Figure 10:</b> Reasons for teenage pregnancy among young women who have ever been pregnant	31
<b>Figure 11:</b> Perception of the most important issues facing youth in South Africa, 2003	33
<b>Figure 12:</b> Perception of risk for unplanned pregnancy, STIs, HIV and sexual assault, 2003	33
<b>Figure 13:</b> Proportion of 15-24 year olds who know of Soul City, loveLife and Khomanani	52

## LIST OF BOXES

<b>Box 1:</b> Description of three national HIV and AIDS campaigns in SA	51
--	----



## FOREWORD BY MINISTER: BASIC EDUCATION

South Africa has made significant progress since 1994 towards achieving gender parity in basic education. In fact, we have gone beyond achieving gender parity, to the extent that girls now make up the majority of enrolments in secondary schools. However, pregnancy is amongst the major concerns that pose a serious threat to gains achieved in public schools thus far. Teenage pregnancy undermines the Department's efforts to ensure that girl children remain in school, in order to contribute towards a quality life for all, free of poverty.

The Department of Education has taken an active role in seeking to understand and effectively address this challenge, as it impacts significantly on learners. In 2008, the Department commissioned a desktop study to document, review and critically analyze literature on teenage pregnancy with a focus on school-going adolescents. The study analyzes both the prevalence of teenage pregnancy and its determinants. It is my privilege to present the report of this study 'Teenage Pregnancy in South Africa, with a specific focus on School-going Learners'.

Findings from this study are that teenage fertility in South Africa has been declining over time. Declines in overall fertility rates have been attributed to, amongst others, increased access to information on reproductive health and rights and improved contraceptive use.

The study has further identified that learner pregnancies are more concentrated in the provinces of Eastern Cape, Limpopo and KwaZulu Natal; thereby necessitating targeted interventions in these areas. In addition, the study states that learner pregnancies are higher in schools located in poorer neighbourhoods.

Despite the reported decline in teenage fertility rates, the high proportion of unintended pregnancies for teenagers in South Africa remains a serious problem. Pregnant teenagers face serious health, socio-economic and educational challenges. One teenage learner pregnant is one too many, and the Department therefore does not take comfort in the reported decline of teenage fertility, but seeks to strengthen efforts towards addressing this challenge. To this end, the Department will develop a comprehensive strategy towards addressing learner pregnancy in South Africa, outlining definitive interventions for implementation through the schooling system. The report also notes that remaining in the education system is a strong factor in preventing teenagers from falling pregnant, and we must therefore continue to work to keep young women in school.

However, we are mindful of the fact that addressing teenage pregnancy is not a challenge facing only one department. Addressing teenage pregnancy is a battle that requires the active involvement of all stakeholders, if it is to be well fought. These stakeholders include other government departments, key organizations in the non-governmental sector; the research community, the religious sector, community leaders and more important, parents and the learners themselves. It is for this reason that we invite all stakeholders to study the report, and draw from it that which can assist them to respond better to the challenges in their respective sectors.

Thank you to the HSRC researchers who worked on this report. I also offer my sincere thanks to our partner UNICEF, who provided the funding that made the study possible.

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'Motshekga'.

**Mrs AM Motshekga**  
Minister of Basic Education  
August 2009

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The transition to parenthood is a major event in the lifespan of any individual, but takes on special significance when it precedes the transition to education, work, citizenship and marriage that collectively offer the skills, resources and social stock necessary for individuals to succeed as parents. Although alternative pathways to parenthood occur and are tolerated to some extent, institutional support for parenthood is still geared towards a traditional sequencing of transitions.

HIV and AIDS is now recognised as the primary reproductive health concern for adolescents, overtaking the long-standing emphasis on adolescent fertility. Yet childbearing among teenagers remains a common social and public health concern worldwide, affecting nearly every society. Teenage fertility establishes the pace and level of fertility over a woman's entire reproductive life span. This has an impact not only on women's health, but on the socio-economic status and general well-being of the population. Despite public health literature and family planning services treating HIV and pregnancy as distinct, they share many common antecedents, chief amongst which is unprotected sex. Furthermore, there is evidence that pregnancy and lactation increase the susceptibility to HIV infection through immunological changes induced during pregnancy.

Even though teenage fertility has been the subject of substantial debate in the social science research and policy circles, concern has not emanated from the increased risk that pregnancy confers to HIV. While current political and media depictions imply that South Africa (hereafter referred to as SA) is confronted with an escalating epidemic of teenage pregnancies, available data suggests that it is an area in which substantial progress has been made since democracy. Yet teenage pregnancy has grown in significance as a social construct and come to represent one of several indicators of burgeoning adolescent delinquency, sexual permissiveness and moral decay.

Education is central to the development of young people as it prepares them for the world of work and for life. As young people spend longer periods in education, as part of the natural course of development, sexual experimentation and maturity is increasingly coinciding with secondary schooling. For most, it remains at the level of experimentation and if sex occurs, indications are that it is more likely to be protected when young people are still at school. However, for a minority, it results in unwanted pregnancy, HIV and other sexually transmitted infections. This has implications for continued educational opportunities.

In a rights-based society, young girls who fall pregnant should not be denied access to education and this is entrenched in law in SA through the Constitution and Schools Act of 1996. In 2007, the Department of Education released *Measures for the Prevention and Management of Learner Pregnancy*. Not without controversy, the guidelines continue to advocate for the right of pregnant girls to remain in school, but suggests up to a two-year waiting period before girls can return to school in the interest of the rights of the child. Any proposed shift in policy and practice needs to be informed by a well-rounded understanding of the context of teenage pregnancy.

### PURPOSE

The purpose of the study was to document, review and critically analyse literature on teenage pregnancy with a focus on school-going adolescents. The specific objectives were as follows:

- To review existing literature and conduct statistical analyses to establish the prevalence and determinants of teenage pregnancy;
- To assess the individual, familial and educative impact of teenage pregnancy;
- To identify and assess the impact of interventions for teenage pregnancy; and
- To propose a conceptual framework for research and interventions to prevent and mitigate the impact of teen pregnancy.

### METHODS

The study involved a desktop review of literature supported by secondary data analysis to provide an overview of research on the prevalence, determinants and interventions for teenage pregnancy.

Although the study focused on pregnancy, the detailed trends presented in the report are on fertility. Understanding the distinction between pregnancy and fertility is essential. Fertility rates refer only to pregnancies that have resulted in live births while pregnancy rates include both live births and pregnancies that have been terminated. Before the introduction of the termination of pregnancy legislation, fertility closely approximated pregnancy rates. Since the legalisation of abortion, however, this can no longer be assumed to be the case. Trends in pregnancy rates in SA cannot be accurately estimated for two reasons. Firstly, it is not known whether pregnancies that were terminated early on are well-captured in survey data and school record systems. Secondly, a comprehensive national register of abortion is not maintained in the country.

SA lacks vital statistics on fertility, pregnancy and abortion. Nevertheless, fertility rates could be reliably estimated from Census data and the Demographic and Health Surveys. For the purposes of this study, trends in teenage fertility were investigated in three stages: (1) Mapping the overall trends in fertility in SA; (2) Documenting trends in teenage fertility relative to overall fertility; and (3) Analysing learner pregnancies reported through the Education Management Information System (EMIS).

The literature review focused on studies dated between 2000 and 2008 but included seminal works prior to 2000. In view of the high rates of HIV infection among young people in SA, sexual behaviour of adolescents has received much national scholarly interest. The literature review was able to draw on four national studies conducted to understand youth sexual behaviour.

Secondary analysis was also conducted on the HSRC 2003 Status of Youth Survey, a nationally representative study of more than 3 500 young people aged between 18 and 35 years. The purpose of the secondary data analysis was to identify factors that are associated with early pregnancy. This included family structure, type of childhood residence, childhood poverty and school dropout.

### MAIN FINDINGS

#### Fertility

The overall decline in fertility in South Africa has run a long course of almost 50 years but at different rates for different population groups. To date, SA has the lowest fertility rate in mainland sub-Saharan Africa. While over time teenage fertility has been declining, this has been at a slower pace than overall fertility. The slower decline in teenage fertility may be attributed to interruptions in fertility associated with national

epochs. For example, the interruption of schooling during the struggle years was associated with a rise in teenage fertility. Similarly, the spike in fertility in the mid-1990s is associated with political changes during that period when there were concerns for the large cohort of young people who had become marginalised from mainstream systems of education, work, health care and family life. However, it must be noted that teenage fertility declined by 10% between 1996 (78 per 1000) and 2001 (65 per 1000). A further decline in teenage fertility (54 per 1000) was reported in the 2007 Community Survey.

Older adolescents aged 17-19 account for the bulk of teenage fertility in SA. While rates are significantly higher among African (71 per 1000) and Coloured (60 per 1000) adolescents, fertility among White (14 per 1000) and Indian (22 per 1000) adolescents approximates that of developed countries. This difference can, in all likelihood, be accounted for by the wide variation in the social conditions under which young people grow up, related to disruptions of family structure, inequitable access to education and health services, as well as the concentration of poverty and unemployment in African and Coloured communities. However, international research shows that even when the above factors are controlled for, differences between population groups persist, indicative of cultural differences with regards to pregnancy.

Analysis of the EMIS data on teenage pregnancy shows an increase in learner pregnancies between 2004 and 2008. However, this trend is contrary to national trends in fertility and is more likely the result of improved reporting, rather than a real increase in fertility. Analysis of provincial trends shows a concentration of learner pregnancies in the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Limpopo. Despite the incompleteness of the EMIS data, it does provide some indications of the types of schools in which learner pregnancies are concentrated. Learner pregnancies are higher in schools that are poorly resourced (lower in specialised schools), those located in poor neighbourhoods (no-fee schools and schools located on land independently owned), as well as in schools that involve considerable age mixing (combined schools). Targeted interventions may be required for combined schools and those located in the poorest neighbourhoods.

### **Abortion**

Despite the legalisation of abortion in SA in 1996 and the progressive increase of service availability in public and private facilities over time, few teenagers report using legal services for termination of pregnancy in both quantitative (3%) and qualitative data. Administrative data from the Department of Health, however, suggests much higher levels (30%) of usage of legal services by young women aged 15-19. These data sources need to be reconciled to establish a true estimate of use of services. Failure to use legal services is related to the ensuing lack of information about the costs of termination and the stage of gestation at which legal termination can take place, as well as the stigma of pregnancy and abortion generated in the community and replicated within the health system. Although abortion is recognised as morally and religiously objectionable, young people apply a 'relative morality' to abortion to circumvent both social and financial hardships and to protect their educational opportunities. So termination does take place, albeit illegally.

### **Determinants**

What the analysis of the trends in fertility shows is that the moral panic about rising teenage pregnancy in SA is unfounded. It is one area in

which policy instruments related to information dissemination (primarily related to HIV), family planning services, and expanding access to education, have been effective. In fact, with the changing socio-economic landscape in SA, positive attitudes towards early pregnancy reported in the early 1990s have shifted. Over two thirds of young women report their pregnancies as unwanted because it interferes with educational aspirations and imposes greater financial hardships in a context of high levels of poverty and unemployment. What is more, significant progress has been noted in dramatically increasing contraceptive use among young people; in particular, condom use.

Yet rates of teenage pregnancy remain unacceptably high. Despite high levels of knowledge about modern methods of contraception, a large cohort of young people do not use contraception and many use them inconsistently and incorrectly. What the moral panic argument does is associate teenage sexuality and failure to use contraception with deviant individual-level behaviour. Yet the literature review and secondary analysis shows that teenage fertility is, in fact, the result of a complex set of varied and inter-related factors, largely associated with the social conditions under which children grow up. Influencing factors include the following:

- When young people drop out of school early, often due to economic barriers and poor school performance, the risk for early pregnancy is significantly higher;
- When they grow up in residential areas where poverty is entrenched (informal areas and rural areas), they are at risk of experiencing an early pregnancy;
- When both parents, and in particular, the mother, is present in the home, risk for early pregnancy is decreased;
- When stigma about adolescent sexuality abounds, few opportunities exist for open communication about sex with parents and partners, and access to judgement-free health services is constrained. As a result, gaps in knowledge about, and access to, contraception is limited;
- When young women are involved in relationships where power is imbalanced, men generally decide the conditions under which sex happens. All too often, this involves coerced or forced sex;
- When young women struggle to meet immediate material needs, they make trade-offs between health and economic security. Reciprocity of sex in exchange for material goods leads to young women remaining in dysfunctional relationships, engaging in multiple sexual partnerships and involvement with older men. Under such conditions, there is little opportunity to negotiate safe sex and the risk for pregnancy is increased.

Pervasive poverty in SA stacks these overlapping sources of risks among some young people, offering them limited information to make optimal choices and few incentives to protect themselves against pregnancy.

### **Role of education**

Education is highly valued by young people in SA and educational aspirations are high. It is therefore not surprising that the rise in access to education since the 1970s, particularly for young women, has been met with a concomitant decline in teenage fertility. Despite the debate as to whether teenage pregnancy is a cause of-, or results from-, dropout, local and international studies show that both share the common antecedent of poverty and poor school performance. While pregnancy may be the end point most directly associated with dropout, it is often not the cause. Girls who perform poorly at school are more likely to drop out of school, experience early fertility and less likely to



return to school following a pregnancy. In fact data from SA shows that *dropout often precedes pregnancy*. Incomplete education has been identified as a significant risk factor for negative reproductive health outcomes, including early pregnancy and HIV.

Even when girls have experienced an early pregnancy, South Africa's liberal policy that allows pregnant girls to remain in school and to return to school post-pregnancy, has protected teen mothers' educational attainment and helped delay second birth. However, only about a third of teenage mothers return to school. This may be related to uneven implementation of the school policy, poor academic performance prior to pregnancy, few child-caring alternatives at home, poor support from family, peers and the school environment, and the social stigma of being a teenage mother. South African data shows that the likelihood of re-entering the education system decreases when childcare support is not available in the home and for every year that teen mothers remain outside of the education system.

Instituting strategies to retain girls in school by addressing both financial and school performance aspects, as well as ensuring early return post-pregnancy, may be the most effective social protection that the education system can offer to prevent and mitigate the impact of early pregnancy. When learners do drop out of school, concerted effort is required to re-enrol them in school or in alternative systems of education.

#### **Young fathers**

Despite the growing focus of research on fatherhood in SA, scant data is available, both locally and internationally, on young fatherhood. Available international research suggests that the profile of young fathers is no different from that of young women – they tend to come from low-income homes, have poor school performance, low educational attainment and seldom have the financial resources to support the child and the mother. Our secondary analysis shows that premature exit from the schooling system almost doubles the odds of becoming a father early on in SA.

Qualitative research among young fathers in SA reports that much like young women, young men experience a strong emotional response on hearing about their impending fatherhood. Contrary to the perception of young women that many young fathers deny paternity, most young men in the study expressed a sense of responsibility for the child and a willingness to be actively involved in the child's life, motivated by the absence of their own fathers in their lives. But the acknowledged caring role of a father is overtaken by a need to provide financially for the child. In a context of pervasive unemployment, few young men can fulfil this role, often leading to estrangement from the child. In addition, poor relations between the female partner and her family, together with cultural factors related to negotiation of paternity and ongoing responsibility for the child also serve as barriers to young men fulfilling their role as father.

Much more empirical research is required in SA on young fatherhood and to understand the role of culture and its impact on continued paternal involvement in children's lives. However, other policy options may have to be considered to ensure paternal support for children. These include gender-based interventions that extend the repertoire of fatherhood beyond 'providing' to being 'present and talking', especially in impoverished conditions where unemployment and poverty is high. In addition, consideration should be given to legal child support

arrangements, much like in the United States of America (US), where legislative interventions have resulted in increased levels of paternal involvement among children of teenage mothers.

#### **Interventions**

In keeping with the multiple spheres of influence on adolescent sexual behaviour, a number of prevention interventions have been instituted in SA. These include school-based sex education, peer education programmes, adolescent-friendly clinic initiatives, mass media interventions as well as community-level programmes. While the focus of these interventions has primarily been on preventing HIV, they have conferred benefit to teenage pregnancy because of their impact on sexual behaviour. Separate interventions for teenage pregnancy and HIV are neither desirable nor feasible. To prevent pregnancy from being overshadowed by a focus on HIV, however, a distinct focus on teenage pregnancy is required. But the range, scale and reach, as well as the quality of implementation of programmes vary widely and have limited their impact on adolescent sexuality. In addition, the small number and lack of rigour of evaluation studies limit the conclusions that can be reached about the effectiveness of interventions. However, based on the growing body of evidence in both developed and developing countries, particularly with regards to HIV, recommendations for effective/promising approaches can be made. These need to be taken to scale to increase the reach and impact of programmes.

What is evident is that a magic bullet for teenage pregnancy does not exist. Given the multiple levels of influence on adolescent sexual behaviour, and, in turn, pregnancy, single intervention strategies by single sectors of society will not solve teenage pregnancy. What is required is a comprehensive approach that incorporates the home, the school, the community, the health care setting as well as change at a structural level. In addition, while each sector should act within its strength and foster linkages with other sectors, an integrated strategy is required to ensure that all sectors act towards achieving a common goal.

As all young people will confront their sexuality at some point in time, universal access to information and skills is required early on to enable them to make informed choices. However, where conditions stack high and overlapping levels of risk against some young people, targeted and more intensive intervention strategies will be required. It is clear, and rightly so, that the sexual risk factors are often targeted emphasised in programmes because they are more directly related to pregnancy and HIV and are more amenable to change. However, what the study has demonstrated is that non-sexual risk factors such as relational (family structure, gender relations) and structural (education, poverty) factors are critical determinants in SA. Yet the thrust of our interventions has been on sexual risk factors. Without interventions that target relational and structural factors, significant declines in the rates of teen fertility will not be achieved. In addition, sexuality is a shared activity between two partners. It makes little sense to empower women about their sexuality without concomitant efforts to empower men about equitable gender relations.

Although strong arguments exist for the thrust of interventions for adolescents to focus on prevention, the unabated and increasing levels of marginalisation of young people across a range of domains provide impetus for a more systematic focus on treatment, care and support. Even if we instituted the most rigorous prevention programmes, some young women will experience early pregnancy. Although remediation

is costly and difficult to achieve, it far outweighs the costs to a society of lost human capital potential. No doubt, second chance programmes are being provided in SA and other developing countries, often by community-based organisations. However, available evidence suggests that they are few, and in all likelihood are small scale and seldom evaluated. A systematic and more formalised system of support is required for those who do experience early pregnancy.

## RECOMMENDATIONS

Based on the assessment of the determinants of teenage pregnancy and a review of key interventions, the following recommendations are made for interventions within the education system. Recommendations are also made for interventions within other sectors with the aim of achieving a comprehensive and integrated approach towards adolescent reproductive health.

### Prevention

#### **Universal implementation of sex education**

The international evidence for the effectiveness of sex education programmes is substantive. Although the South African evaluation studies are less convincing, sex education should form a critical component of a comprehensive strategy towards reducing teenage pregnancy. However, a number of steps need to be taken to improve the focus, quality and level of implementation of programmes in South African schools. These include:

- Ensuring that programmes meet most of the 17 criteria identified for effective sex education programmes in developed and developing countries. These criteria focus on the process of developing the curriculum, the context of the curriculum and implementation of the curriculum;
- Including a definitive focus on pregnancy (rather than only HIV) by addressing knowledge and beliefs about contraception, conception and pregnancy and focusing on responsibilities of parenthood, knowledge and skills required for successful parenthood, together with an understanding of the importance of planning for and timing of parenthood;
- Adopting a comprehensive approach that addresses both abstinence and safe sex practices, rather than an abstinence-only focus. The focus of the programme (abstinence or safe sex) should be dependent on the stage of development/age of the learner, rather than the grade. This will ensure that learners who are older for their grade (due to high levels of repetition – a known risk factor for dropout, and, in turn pregnancy) receive developmentally appropriate messaging;
- Focusing on both the biological and social risk factors (such as gender power relations, poverty, early school dropout) that lead to early pregnancy;
- Addressing barriers to the full implementation of programmes in schools including raising the level of priority it assumes within the education system, addressing community perceptions and stigma, and improving teacher willingness and readiness to deliver the programme;
- Engaging peer educators or youth/community organisations as a support to teachers in and outside of the classroom. While the benefits of peer education may be greatest to peer educators themselves, this could make an important contribution to generating a new cadre of leaders at community level who can serve as role models for among others, positive sexuality and equitable gender relations; and

- Setting up a number of rigorously-evaluated effectiveness studies that focus on pregnancy as a distinct outcome using biological measures.

As a support to comprehensive sex education in schools, an assessment of the availability of condoms in the community should be conducted. Where community availability of condoms to young people is low, consideration should be given to making condoms available through the school system.

#### **Targeted interventions for high risk groups**

A number of adolescents are at elevated risk for teenage pregnancy because of the social conditions in which they live. Markers of learners at elevated risk include those repeating grades, those who are frequently absent from school, learners with a history of childhood sexual or physical abuse, learners who engage in substance abuse or misuse, and learners living in conditions of extreme poverty. An early warning system must be established such that teachers can identify learners at elevated risk and refer them to systems within the school or in the community for more individualised and intensive intervention.

Our secondary analysis of EMIS data indicates that higher rates of learner pregnancies are reported in schools located in poor neighbourhoods (measured by no-fee schools and farm schools) and those in which age-mixing is significant (measured by combined schools), indicative of gender power imbalances. As part of a phased approach towards teenage pregnancy within the school system, interventions should be targeted at combined schools and those located in the poorest communities.

#### **Interventions to retain learners in school**

The traditional approach of health promotion within the school setting has been to focus on improving the health of learners to facilitate learning outcomes. However, given the considerable protection that education can offer to health outcomes, improving both the quality and quantity of education may offer significant benefits.

Incomplete schooling is a significant risk factor for both pregnancy and HIV in SA. Instituting interventions that promote uninterrupted schooling may be an effective method to prevent early pregnancy and HIV. As financial concerns and high levels of repetition are two of the chief reasons for inordinate levels of drop out in SA, addressing the financial barriers to schooling and setting up a system for the remediation of school performance for those learners repeating grades may be effective interventions. Conditional cash transfer programmes have proven to be effective in improving school attendance in Mexico, Bangladesh, Nicaragua and Brazil. Plans are underway to test such a programme in SA with HIV as an outcome measure. Such an intervention may also confer benefit to teenage pregnancy but would need to be a distinct outcome measure of the trial.

When learners do drop out of school, a systematic process is required to either re-enrol them in school, or enrol them in alternative systems of education. In order to dramatically increase the number of young people enrolled in alternative pathways such as Further Education and Training (FET) or Adult Basic Education and Training (ABET), however, a number of gaps need to be addressed. These include ensuring that such programmes are adequately resourced, providing quality education services, and reframing them as legitimate and credible systems linked to mainstream pathways (HSRC, 2007). In addition, alternative systems must offer viable exit opportunities for participants by cohering with further education and economic opportunities. Young people using alternative pathways rarely

experience difficulties in only one aspect of their lives (Yohalem and Pittman, 2001). They often require support on numerous fronts. Service provision must be comprehensive and tend to development in a holistic manner. The structure of second chance programmes must also be flexible to accommodate the economic imperatives and family commitments that make young people turn to alternative systems.

### **Service learning**

Service learning programmes that involve community service that is either voluntary or linked to the school curriculum, have shown positive effects on sexual activity and pregnancy in the US, even when programmes have not directly addressed sexuality. Instituting such interventions may be a cost-effective youth development strategy that is in line with the goals of the second-generation youth policy in SA. These goals include promoting community participation among school-going learners and providing much-needed work experience for young people – a prerequisite for employment; while simultaneously offering protection to reproductive health outcomes.

### **Second chances**

As in most countries that have developed flexible school policies with regards to pregnancy, policy effectiveness in SA is limited by the extent to which it is consistently implemented. In particular, the core constituency – young men and women, need to be empowered about their right to education in order for them to demand access when provision is denied.

Much advocacy work is also required to ensure that the gatekeepers of education - principals, teachers and fellow learners, buy into the policy to reduce the stigma that often turns young mothers away from the doors of learning.

An enabling policy needs to be supported by a programmatic focus that addresses the barriers to learning. Chief among these is ensuring the prompt return of girls to the schooling system post pregnancy. The suggestion of 'up to a two-year waiting period before returning to school' in the Department of Education learner pregnancy guidelines, may be counterproductive to both maternal and child outcomes. In addition, catch-up programmes with respect to the academic curriculum will need to be provided and, in particular, remedial education to improve poor school performance that often leads to dropout.

Strong referral networks are also required with relevant government departments and other community structures that can support learners with childcare arrangements, reproductive health services (especially access to contraception in order to prevent a second pregnancy), child support grants and parenting skills transfer (to mitigate the intergenerational transmission of early parenthood). While a mass-based system is effective for the prevention of pregnancy, teenage mothers benefit more from intensive, individualised support. Setting up a one-on-one relationship with an educator or community organisation will assist teen mothers in negotiating the range of new economic, educational and social imperatives that they face.

### **Other sectors**

#### **Communities**

There is ample empirical evidence to show that when young people are excluded from mainstream systems such as education, they are at

increased risk for high-risk behaviour. This is clearly evident in SA with regards to the link between school dropout and risk of pregnancy and HIV. While interventions are instituted to prevent recurring marginalisation from the school system, concomitant efforts are required within the community to support young people at high risk for pregnancy. But community participation among young people is very low in SA and the reach of large-scale interventions in the community such as loveLife is not optimal. Expanding participation in community-based interventions represents a potential growth area in responding to adolescent sexual and reproductive health in SA although more rigorous evaluation studies are required to demonstrate their efficacy. In addition, given that stigma about adolescent sexuality and imbalanced gender relations are often generated at community level and replicated within homes and the health setting, instituting interventions to shift community norms may be an effective method to open up channels of communication about sex, to improve young people's access to health services and to foster equitable gender relations.

Given the inextricable link between adolescent motherhood and poverty and socio-economic disadvantage, efforts to empower young women through skills development and opportunities for developing sustainable livelihoods may assist in minimising trade-offs between health and economic security. In fact a cluster randomised trial that tested a microfinance structural intervention on economic security, empowerment of women and intimate partner violence, was able to halve the risk of physical and sexual violence after two years (Kim et al., 2007). Such interventions that create synergy between health and development goals, may offer promising approaches for pregnancy and HIV risk reduction.

#### **Health**

Despite significant advancements at policy and programmatic levels to improve the availability and accessibility of health services to young people, usage is compromised by lack of acceptability of services. Even with the roll-out of the Adolescent Friendly Clinic Initiative in SA, young people are still confronted with the negative and stigmatising attitudes of health staff. Thus young women would rather not use contraception, delay accessing antenatal care when they are pregnant, and resort to illegal means for termination of pregnancy. Much more rigorous effort is required to roll out adolescent-friendly services and to entrench their key principles among the custodians of health care. In addition, the full range of preventative services for pregnancy should be made available and accessible to young people. In particular, emergency contraception, that is considered safe and effective, and that *does not increase sexual activity* among young people, should be deregulated to increase availability and usage.

Until the quality of health care services is improved for young people, consideration should be given to making health services available outside of the formal health system. For example, mobile services are proving to be an effective means to provide voluntary counselling and testing services to young people, and in particular, to young men, who do not generally attend traditional health services.

#### **Parents**

As the primary socialising agents of children, parents are a trusted source of information about sexuality for young people. Yet this represents a missed opportunity because most parents lack both knowledge and skill to talk openly about sex and feel disempowered to parent their children in an environment that emphasises a rights-based

culture for children. In addition, the generational knowledge gap, fuelled by the educational gap between parents and children, also contributes to their sense of disempowerment. However, family level interventions trialed in SA have shown that programmes can promote open communication about sensitive subjects between parents and children, and serve to foster strong parent-child bonds, as well as teach parents how to set and enforce rules. As a support to sex education in the school setting, consideration should be given to wide-scale implementation of such programmes.

#### **Mass media**

Mass media campaigns in SA have played a seminal role in improving knowledge about sexual behaviour and, in particular, about HIV. Three

multi-media campaigns, namely loveLife, Soul City and Khomanani have reached high levels of coverage among young people – the former two above the 80 percent mark required for high intensity and high frequency coverage. Evidence for the cumulative effect of a range of mass media programmes suggest that they have been effective in shifting a number of health behaviours including condom use, self-efficacy to use condoms, communication with partners and peers about HIV testing and faithfulness to partners. While there is support for the increased coverage and intensity of media programmes, a distinct focus on teenage pregnancy is required. In addition, because of the threshold effect of exposure to media programmes, such interventions need to form part of a comprehensive strategy towards teenage pregnancy.

## INTRODUCTION

The transition to parenthood is a major event in the lifespan of any individual, but takes on special significance when it occurs early on, particularly in a changing global context for young people (National Research Council & Institute of Medicine, 2005). Being prepared to take on the life-long responsibility of rearing a child, and in many respects shaping the outcomes of the next generation, requires not only physiological and psychological maturity, but also family circumstances that offer the support necessary to make a successful transition to parenthood. First-time parents are more successful when they have already completed other transitions - to education, to work, to citizenship and to marriage (NRC & IOM, 2005). It is through these transitions that young people begin to acquire the skills, experience and social stock necessary to succeed as parents (NRC & IOM, 2005). And, although alternative pathways to parenthood occur and are tolerated to some extent, institutional support for parenthood is still geared towards a traditional sequencing of transitions (NRC & IOM, 2005).

But in a rapidly-changing global context with new-found opportunities and risks for young people, the benchmarks for successful transition to adulthood have changed. Youth today are the best educated ever in human history and the majority of young people aspire towards, and see the benefits of, education. Advances in health care mean that many more children are able to enter youth healthier than ever before, and access to contraception means that family sizes are diminishing too. The spread of democratic governance offers many young people the opportunity to participate in civic and political life (NRC & IOM, 2005). But the future has never been as precarious as it is today, for young people. While the quantity of education is expanding, its quality is contracting; when more young people can access education for longer, fewer are able to find work; when health care has advanced exponentially in the last century, new communicable diseases are hampering the opportunities of young people; when rights to participate in decision making is entrenched in law, too many are withdrawing their participation; and in the age of an information, communication and technology explosion, behaviour change has never been as difficult to bring about. In such a context, where the linearity of transitions has been fractured, early childbearing and its consequences for individuals and for institutions take on new levels of significance and meaning.

HIV and AIDS is now recognised as the primary reproductive health concern for adolescents, overtaking the long-standing emphasis on adolescent fertility. Yet childbearing among teenagers remains a common social and public health concern worldwide, affecting nearly every society (Dangal, 2006; Hogan, Sun & Cornwell, 2000; Shaw, Lawlor & Najman, 2006). Even though public health literature and family planning services treat pregnancy and HIV as distinct, they share the common antecedent of unprotected sex. In fact, there is evidence that pregnancy and lactation increases the susceptibility to HIV infection by induced immunological changes (Gray et al., 2005). As such teenage mothers, and in particular, pregnant women, represent an important target group for HIV prevention.

The Millennium Development Goals (MDGs) defined by Heads of State in 2000 placed maternal health firmly on the international agenda by identifying it as the fifth of eight goals that the world must respond to decisively by 2015 (United Nations, 2000). Because of the physiological risks associated with early childbirth, and the risk to the overall well-

being of the mother and her children, decreasing adolescent fertility is identified as one of the indicators to monitor progress in achieving this developmental target. Teenage fertility establishes the pace and level of fertility over a woman's entire reproductive life span (Ventura, Abma, Mosher & Henshaw, 2008; Woodward, Harwood & Fergusson, 2001). This has an impact not only on women's health, but also on the socio-economic status and general well-being of the population.

Adolescence and early adulthood are considered the healthiest stages of the lifespan. Yet young people contribute considerably to the quadruple burden of disease profile in SA. While deaths from HIV and injuries peak in the youthful years, the risk factors for death from non-communicable disease are also initiated during adolescence and early adulthood. In fact, unsafe sex/sexually transmitted infections (31.5%), interpersonal violence (8.4%), alcohol use (7%) and tobacco use (4%) - the vast majority of which are initiated during adolescence - are the leading risk factors for the burden of disease profile in SA (MRC, 2008). HIV is the most critical threat to the health and overall well-being of youth in SA. Because the epidemic is driven by infections among young people, they are a critical group to intervene with to halt the spread of AIDS and reduce new infections (UNAIDS, 2004). There is a strong association between pregnancy and HIV infection in SA. Antenatal data shows that 12.9 percent of 15-19 year old pregnant women are HIV positive (DOH, 2008b). From age 17 onwards, every second woman who has been pregnant, is infected with HIV (Harrison, 2008a).

Even though teenage fertility has been the subject of considerable debate in the social science research and policy circles, concern has not emanated from the increased risk that pregnancy confers to HIV. While current political and media depictions imply that SA is confronted with an escalating epidemic of teenage pregnancies, available data suggests that this is an area in which substantial progress has been made since the advent of democracy. Yet teenage pregnancy has grown in significance as a social construct and come to represent one of several indicators of burgeoning adolescent delinquency, sexual permissiveness and moral decay.

The moral panic about teenage pregnancy re-emerges perennially through media reports of links between teenage pregnancy and the Child Support Grant (CSG), rising school dropout rates because of pregnancy and the increased visibility of pregnant girls in schools (see for example 'Pupil dies after giving birth' *The Star*, February 13 2009; 'Teenage pregnancy no surprise?', *The Mercury*, May 9 2008; 'Pregnant pupils expelled', *The Mercury*, May 8 2008; 'Pregnancy Blues', February 13 2008; 'Child grants used for booze - NGOs', *Cape Argus*, September 29 2008; 'Maternity leave for SA's pregnant pupils', *The Times*, May 30 2007).

Such a negative and moralistic framing of the issue shifts the focus away from the successes that have been achieved in decreasing teenage pregnancy and coping with its consequences. It is victim-blaming, placing the responsibility for teenage pregnancy squarely on the shoulders of individuals and drowns out evidence-based rationale (such as the critical link between pregnancy and HIV) for why public expenditure should continue to focus on teenage pregnancy.

Despite the legislative and biomedical successes in positively influencing the path of teenage pregnancy in SA, rates still remain unacceptably high. In part, this can be explained by the demographic transition that SA is undergoing, resulting in a shift in fertility to younger ages. But for

most parts, it can be explained by the range of deeply rooted social drivers, common to many public health issues that are yet to be adequately addressed in SA. Factors such as low levels of skills to negotiate sexuality, poor access to health care services, gender power imbalances, sexual coercion and violence, poverty, low socio-economic status and poor life opportunities to further education or to establish livelihoods lie at the heart of early pregnancy, HIV and other sexually transmitted infections among young people.

Education is central to the development of young people as it prepares them for the world of work and for life. In line with global trends, young people in SA are spending more years acquiring the requisite levels of education. Enrolment rates in primary and secondary school are high in SA. But rates of repetition, dropout, late entry and re-entry persist, implying that age-for-grade matching is poor. Aspirations for education are high in SA and many older learners can still be found in secondary school. As such, as part of the natural course of development, sexual experimentation and maturity is increasingly coinciding with secondary schooling. For most, it remains at the level of experimentation and if sex occurs, indications are that it is more likely to be protected when young people are still at school (NRC & IOM, 2005). However, for a minority, it results in unwanted pregnancy, HIV and other sexually transmitted infections. This has implications for continued educational opportunities.

In a rights-based society, young girls who experience early pregnancy should not be denied access to education and this has been entrenched in law through the Constitution and Schools Act of 1996, but has largely been the practice before the transition to democracy. However, without policy to govern practice, implementation has been uneven and some girls continue to be stigmatised, suspended, or expelled from school when they experience an early pregnancy. Schools require guidelines on how to uniformly and optimally prevent and respond to early pregnancy such that the right of the adolescent to education is protected and equally balanced against their need to access health care and support, and to maintain the focus on learning within the school environment.

In 2007, the Department of Education released *Measures for the Prevention and Management of Learner Pregnancy*. Not without controversy, the guidelines continue to advocate for the right of pregnant girls to remain in school, but suggests up to a two-year waiting period before girls can return to school in the interest of the rights of the child. Any proposed shift in policy and practice needs to be informed by a well-rounded understanding of the context of teenage pregnancy. It is in this light that UNICEF, on behalf of the Department of Education, commissioned the Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) to consolidate the available research on teenage pregnancy in SA, with a focus on pregnancy in the school setting.

## METHODS

### TERMS OF REFERENCE

#### Aims

The purpose of the study is to document, review and critically analyse literature on teenage pregnancy with a focus on school-going adolescents.

#### Objectives

The specific objectives are as follows:

- To review existing literature and conduct statistical analyses to establish the prevalence and determinants of teenage pregnancy;
- To assess the individual, familial and educative impact of teenage pregnancy;
- To identify and assess the impact of interventions for teenage pregnancy; and
- To propose a conceptual framework for research and interventions to prevent and mitigate the impact of teen pregnancy.

#### Approach to the study

The study involved a desktop review of literature supported by secondary data analysis to provide an overview of research on the prevalence, determinants and interventions for teenage pregnancy.

#### Literature review

Although the study focused on pregnancy, the detailed trends presented in the report are on fertility. Understanding the distinction between pregnancy and fertility is essential. Fertility rates refer only to pregnancies that have resulted in live births while pregnancy rates include those that were terminated. Before the introduction of the termination of pregnancy legislation, fertility closely approximated pregnancy rates. Since the legalisation of abortion, however, this cannot be assumed to be the case. Trends in pregnancy rates in SA are not well known for two reasons. First, it is not known whether pregnancies that were terminated early on are well captured in survey data and school record systems. Secondly, a comprehensive national register of abortion is not maintained in the country.

SA lacks vital statistics on fertility, pregnancy and abortion. Nevertheless, national trends in teenage fertility could be gauged from the 1996 and 2001 Census data as well as the 1996 South African Demographic and Health Survey (SADHS). Some caution has to be exercised in interpreting the Census data as a significant amount of data had to be imputed because of missing information. The fertility data collected in the 2003 SADHS is unreliable due to problems with fieldwork in KwaZulu-Natal. Hence national data on teenage fertility is not available in SA post 2001. However, trends in fertility can be estimated from demographic surveillance sites in rural KwaZulu-Natal and Bushbuckridge in Limpopo province. Both sites have collected fertility data over the past two decades providing an overall picture of the trends in teenage fertility pre- and post- 2001.

The literature review comprised the following steps:

Keyword searches were conducted for each level of review (prevalence, determinants and interventions) for local and international articles in English on the following six public research databases (Ebscohost,

ProQuest, ScienceDirect, SABINET, African Health link and African Journals online). For a detailed description of the databases covered see Appendix I.

Studies dated between 2000 and 2008 were eligible for inclusion. However, seminal works prior to 2000 were also considered. The search focused on teenagers between the ages of 15-19 years. However, in some cases, age definitions used in studies differed from country to country, and if these studies were included, the age ranges are specified. Reference lists of seminal articles were also scanned to identify papers and reports. The searches included published peer-reviewed journal articles, conference presentations, reports, book chapters, abstracts, as well as evaluations of interventions targeting youth and adolescents.

Through the HSRC's own work on adolescent risk behaviour (which included issues such as teenage fertility, sexual behaviour, and behaviour change models), an extensive bibliography on the prevalence, determinants and interventions for adolescent risk behaviours was developed and this was included as part of the review.

In view of the high rates of HIV infection among young people in SA, sexual behaviour of adolescents has received much national scholarly interest. Four national studies were used extensively in the review to characterise youth sexual behaviour. These include:

- The 2003 Reproductive Health Research Unit survey on HIV and sexual behaviour of youth aged 15-24 years (Pettifor et al., 2004), referred to in the study as the *2003 RHRU survey*;
- The 2006 SABC and Kaiser Family Foundation survey that focused on HIV awareness, sexual behaviour and broadcast media among youth aged 15-24 years (Kaiser Family Foundation & SABC, 2006), referred to in the review as the *2006 Kaiser/SABC Study*; and
- The 2002 and 2005 HSRC South African National HIV Prevalence, HIV Incidence, Behaviour and Communication Surveys (SABSMM) (Shisana & Simbayi, 2002; Shisana et al., 2005), referred to as the *2002 and 2005 SABSMM Survey*, respectively.

Review of information collected by Departments of Education, Health, Social Development, Statistics South Africa, Medical Research Council, Reproductive Health Research Unit, loveLife and other key research organisations also assisted in establishing the focus, scope and coverage of information on teenage pregnancy. In addition, key policy documents from the Department of Education, Health and Social Development, pertaining to adolescent health were reviewed to sketch the policy context.

Several studies have been commissioned by the Department of Social Development to assess the link between the CSG and teenage pregnancy. The key findings from these studies are summarised to provide an assessment of this link.

The literature review also included a search and review of teen pregnancy, STI and HIV prevention programmes in South Africa; specifically those supported by government with the aim of identifying best practice models.

#### Secondary data analysis

The following datasets were analysed to establish statistical and demographic trends in teenage fertility:

- Department of Education, Education Management Information System (EMIS) data;
- HSRC, Status of Youth Survey 2003;

EMIS is a Department of Education information management system that contains selected administrative attributes of all schools in SA. For the purposes of this analysis, the EMIS data set was integrated with pregnancy rates recorded in South African schools for the period 2004-2008. To provide more textured analyses of the types of schools in which pregnancies are more prevalent, the following variables were captured from the Department of Education website:

- School fees: fee schools and no-fee schools;
- The level of school specialisation: ordinary, comprehensive and specialised;
- Institutional phase of school: primary, intermediate, secondary and combined; and
- Land ownership of the school: public and independent ownership

The EMIS data available for the study did not include variables often posited in national and international literature as having a bearing on learner pregnancy rates. These include, among others, school pass rates, learner dropout rates and socio-economic levels of the school community. Nevertheless, the variables selected above do give some information on the context of the school that is relevant for the differentiation of school pregnancy rates.

The HSRC 2003 Status of Youth Survey (Richter et al., 2005) was a nationally representative study of more than 3 500 young people aged between 18 and 35 years. The survey was commissioned by the Umsobomvu Youth Fund to provide a broad national picture of young people in the key domains of education, labour market participation, inequality, health and disability, crime and violence, and social integration. The data set has a number of questions that are related to the reproductive history of young people. These questions include the age at sex debut and of first pregnancy and the history of contraceptive use. In addition to these questions, the study included a number of questions about young people's childhood experiences. These include whether the young persons' biological parents were part of their childhood household; economic status of the household; and the residential type of the area. Of importance to this study, is the question that asked the age at which young people left school. This question enabled us to assess whether premature exit from the schooling system increased or decreased the chances of young people experiencing early pregnancy. More details on the study methodology can be found in Appendix 2.

The purpose of the secondary data analysis conducted for this review was to identify factors that are associated with early pregnancy. Cox

regression techniques were applied to examine the net effect of selected eco-developmental factors on early pregnancy. The selection of the independent variables was determined largely by the availability of relevant variables in the datasets collected for the study.

Cox regression is a life table method that assesses the relationship between independent variables (e.g., family structure, type of childhood residence, childhood poverty and school dropout) and a dependent variable (early pregnancy) that is continuous and is censored by the interview process. In this study, the technique was used to determine the number of years a woman takes from birth to the time of experiencing first pregnancy, when not all women interviewed had actually fallen pregnant (censored by the interview process). In addition, an assessment was made of childhood experiences mentioned above, that lead to women having earlier or later pregnancy.

### Definitions

**Adolescent fertility rate** (also known as teenage fertility rate or teenage birth rate) is defined as the number of live births per 1000 women aged 15-19 years.

**Teenage pregnancy rates** include number of stillborns, abortions and miscarriages. Data on abortion rates are often unavailable and unreliable, especially in developing countries, due to variations in the legal status of abortion. Hence adolescent fertility rates may be a more reliable measure.

**Age-specific fertility rate** is defined as the incidence of live births per female population of a given age group per year.

**Total fertility rate** is defined as the mean number of children a woman would have by the end of her childbearing years if she were to pass through these years bearing children at the age-specific rates.

Both local and international studies use variable definitions of adolescent fertility, and these are often not clearly defined. In some cases, only live births are reported; in others, pregnancy rates (including stillborns, abortions and miscarriages) are reported, and yet in others conception rates (excluding stillborns, abortions and miscarriages) are reported. This makes the interpretation of findings and rate comparisons across studies difficult. Because abortion is illegal in many countries and statistics are not always reliable in countries where it is legalised, the study primarily reports on adolescent fertility rates. However, where data is only available on teenage pregnancy rates, these are specified.



## TRENDS IN TEENAGE FERTILITY

### LITERATURE REVIEW

#### International

Fertility rates for all women continue to fall world-wide. Adolescent fertility rates were fairly high at a global level prior to the early 1990s. However, these rates have progressively declined over time or remained constant (Santelli, Carter, Orr & Dittus, 2009; Santelli, Durberstein-Lindberg, Finer & Singh, 2007). Adolescent fertility rates fell in almost all developing countries between 1990 and 2000. However rates either stagnated or increased marginally between 2000 and 2005 (see Figure 1) (United Nations, 2008). Sub-Saharan Africa has the highest teenage fertility rates in the world and rates have declined only marginally between 1990 and 2005 (United Nations, 2008). Although overall fertility has declined substantially in Latin America and the Caribbean as well as South-Eastern Asia over the past two decades, little progress has been made in declining adolescent fertility in these regions (United Nations, 2008). Global declines in overall fertility have been attributed to the increased availability of family planning, but there is as yet a substantial unmet gap for contraception amongst young women (United Nations, 2008).

Developed countries experienced a long period of industrialisation, which was accompanied by declining overall fertility levels and a rise in the age at first marriage since the 1970s (Singh & Darroch, 2000). The United States (US), however, has had one of the highest teenage fertility rates and the decline has been slow (Singh & Darroch, 2000). This has been related to higher levels of inequality in the population (The Alan Guttmacher Institute, 2001). Similarly, the UK reports the highest levels of teenage fertility in Western Europe. However, dramatic declines in teenage fertility have been reported in the US in the past decade and to a lesser extent in the UK through a number of focused policy strategies. While teenage fertility rates decreased in the US by 35 percent between 1991 and 2005 (Ventura et al., 2008), rates in the UK declined by 10.6 percent between 1994-98 and 1999-2003 (Wilkinson et al., 2006).

Africa, the Caribbean and Asia have a different historical context and overall fertility including adolescent fertility rates is mostly higher than that in developed countries. Given a largely agrarian, rural society in Africa, in some cases children play a crucial role in sustaining the agrarian livelihood and therefore demographic and fertility transition lags behind. In addition, socio-economic status, particularly education, plays a crucial role in reducing fertility (Bongaarts, 2002). Analysis of the determinants of age-specific fertility rates in 24 countries in Africa showed that declines in fertility have stalled in countries where there has been little educational and economic progress (Shapiro & Gebreselassie, 2007). However, countries that have increased the number of women with secondary or higher education have experienced declines in fertility (Shapiro & Gebreselassie, 2007).

Figure 1: Births to women aged 15-19 per thousand women, 1990, 2000 and 2005



Source: United Nations, 2008

### Fertility history in South Africa

South Africa has the lowest Total Fertility Rate (TFR) in sub-Saharan Africa with rates comparable to middle-income countries in the developed world (Moultrie & Timeaus, 2003). The fertility decline in SA has run a long course of almost half a century. Earlier work on fertility in SA documented from the late nineteenth century up to the early 1970s was mostly based on census data (see Gouws, 1987; Sadie, 1978; Simkins & van Heyningen, 1989).

From the 1980s, direct estimates were derived from demographic and health surveys, conducted throughout SA. These surveys were modelled on World Fertility Surveys (WFS). Surveys were conducted separately for different administrative areas of SA, with slight variations in content and timing. Results of these surveys were mainly used to estimate fertility levels.

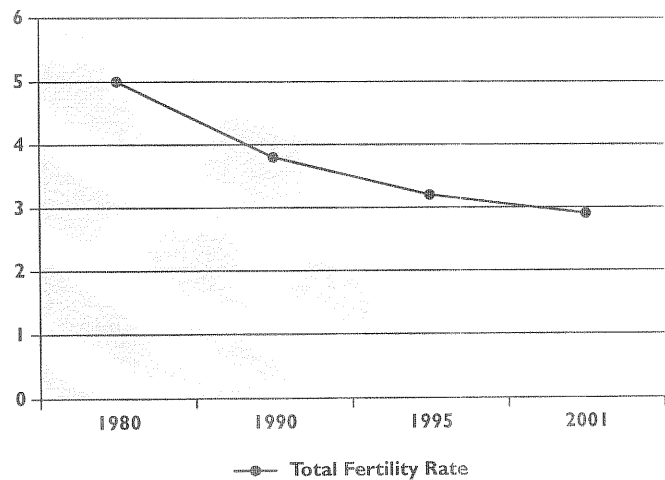
The fertility level of the White population recorded in the early 1930s was 3.3. This fluctuated over a narrow range until the early 1970s, when it continued to decline to the present estimates of 1.7, considered below replacement level. Fertility levels of the Indian and Coloured populations were recorded as 7.3 and 6.3 respectively in the period 1936-1941 (the Indian fertility level was the highest in SA during this period). Fertility declined much faster amongst the Indian population from 7.3 to the present estimate of 2.1 (Grobbelaar, 1984; Mostert, 1991; Sadie, 1973).

A significant decline in fertility within the Coloured and African populations began much later in the early 1960s. In the time period until recently, fertility declined more rapidly among the Coloured population group than among the African group. Major questions remain about the fertility transition of the African population. The timing of the onset of the fertility decline is unclear. It has been dated to the first half of the 1960s without any strong empirical evidence. We know that the fertility data of the African population that was available in the 1960s could not have been strong enough to permit a rigorous estimation of trends.

New data has been produced in the last 20 years that improves our knowledge of recent trends in fertility at the national level. These include the data from a series of surveys by the HSRC from 1987 to 1989, called the South African Demographic and Health Surveys (SADHS), and covered the formerly-White SA and the homelands (Mostert, 1991), the Living Standard Survey of 1993 and the results of the annual October Household Surveys since 1993.

Estimates from the Living Standard Surveys (LSS) and the Central Statistics Services (CSS) paint a general picture of declining fertility in recent times. Based on the CSS figures for 1994, national fertility declined from 4.3 to 2.9 which represents a 32.6 percent change within a period of less than ten years (1982-1992). Most of the decline in fertility during this period occurred among the African population.

Figure 2: Overall fertility trends in South Africa



Source: Zuberi et al., 2005

### Teenage fertility in relation to overall fertility

In most traditional societies of the world, marriage is early and universal. In addition, marriage is associated with the onset of reproductive life. However, in SA, marriage is not universal and when it does happen it is usually delayed. The average age of marriage in SA is estimated at 29 years, and about half of all women in the reproductive ages do not marry (Kalule-Sabiti, Palamuleni, Makiwane & Amoateng, 2007). While early marriage is rare, this does not deter childbearing among adolescents. Data from the 2003 Status of the Youth Survey (Richter et al., 2005) showed that the median age of sexual debut is between ages 16 and 17. By age 20, half of young people have given birth to a child.

The relationship between marriage and fertility is tenuous. While fertility in SA is common outside marriage, non-marriage generally leads to higher fertility. This is reflected by the common occurrence of early and unplanned births to unmarried women, which is followed much later by a more controlled childbearing trajectory (Makiwane, 1998).

Generally, overall fertility trends in SA and most developing countries are uni-directional - from high to low fertility. While over time, teenage fertility in SA is also declining, albeit at a slower pace than overall fertility, evidence is that this decline is interrupted from time to time. Available data, shown below, indicate that teenage fertility is subject to fluctuations that are uncommon to overall fertility. The following two case studies illustrate this point clearly.

### Case A: Trends in fertility in the Eastern Cape

The first case is based on analysis of data collected in 1993 by the Department of Welfare and Pension in the Eastern Cape for a study titled 'Fertility and family size preferences in the Eastern Cape: A study of the Transkei sub-region'. The study based its sampling frame on the 1991 census figures.

A representative sample of 2 290 women between the ages of 15 and 49 was interviewed. The questionnaire included sections on household characteristics, demographic information and questions on reproductive health.

Fertility trends were analysed from the data set using Fertility Exposure Analysis (FEA) by Hobcraft and Little (1984). With FEA, estimates of fertility change can be derived from different surveys provided that the data are available and survey methodologies are sufficiently similar (see Pullum, Casterline & Shah, 1987). The FEA method enables one to track fertility trends from the birth histories of women interviewed.

From the FEA analysis, Table 1 below shows age-specific fertility rates and total fertility rates in five-year age groups for the period 1980-1994 for women classified by marital status.

**Table 1: Fertility trends in Transkei by marital status and age, 1980-1994**

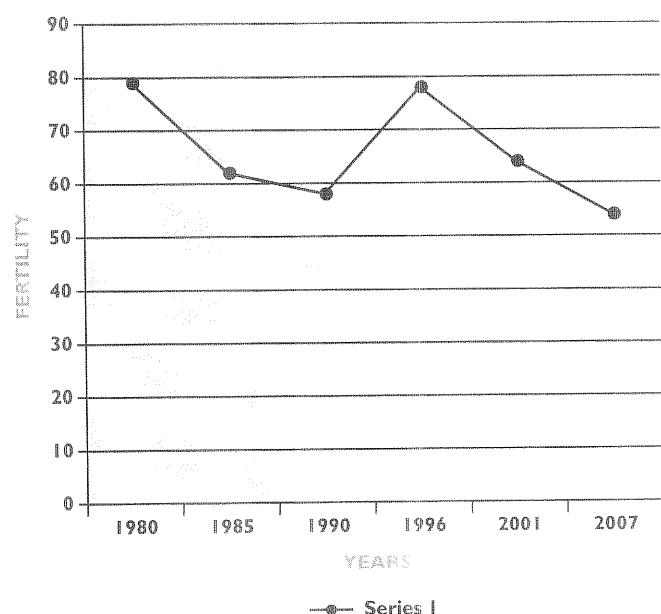
MARITAL STATUS	AGE AT SURVEY	1980-1984	1985-1989	1990-1994
<b>All Women</b>	15-19	0.040	0.046	0.042
	20-24	0.190	0.167	0.159
	25-29	0.232	0.229	0.215
	30-34	0.212	0.216	0.201
	35-39	0.194	0.155	0.165
	40-44	0.128	0.128	0.104
	45-49	0.047	0.047	0.047
	<b>TFR</b>		<b>5.4</b>	<b>5.0</b>
<b>Ever Married</b>	15-19	0.051	0.084	0.096
	20-24	0.203	0.199	0.262
	25-29	0.246	0.255	0.257
	30-34	0.228	0.237	0.216
	35-39	0.195	0.171	0.173
	40-44	0.131	0.131	0.115
	45-49	0.045	0.043	0.043
	<b>TFR</b>		<b>5.4</b>	<b>5.6</b>
<b>Currently Married</b>	15-19	0.049	0.083	0.110
	20-24	0.200	0.195	0.261
	25-29	0.250	0.266	0.261
	30-34	0.243	0.254	0.225
	35-39	0.235	0.173	0.187
	40-44	0.165	0.165	0.130
	45-49	0.057	0.057	0.057
	<b>TFR</b>		<b>6.0</b>	<b>6.0</b>
<b>Never Married</b>	15-19	0.022	0.024	0.039
	20-24	0.153	0.109	0.101
	25-29	0.171	0.153	0.136
	30-34	0.111	0.127	0.155
	35-39	0.192	0.058	0.131
	40-44	0.108	0.108	0.037
	45-49	0.069	0.069	0.069
	<b>TFR</b>		<b>4.1</b>	<b>3.2</b>

In the late 1980s, fertility declined among women in their 30s and 40s and the reverse was the case for women below 30, where a slight increase was recorded.

The study also shows a considerable reduction in total fertility in the 10-year period. A more complex picture is evident for women in their teenage years. Generally, overall teenage fertility rose in the early 1980s from 40 births per 1 000 women to about 46 births per 1 000 women and it declined again to about 42 births per 1 000 women in the early 1990s. A different picture is evident for women who never married. For the same period, fertility of teenage women who never married consistently increased from 22 to 24 and 39 births per 1 000 women respectively. This occurred in spite of a massive overall decline in the fertility of never-married women during the same period.

*Case B: South African fertility trends, 1980-2007*

**Figure 3: Trends in teenage fertility, 1980-2007**

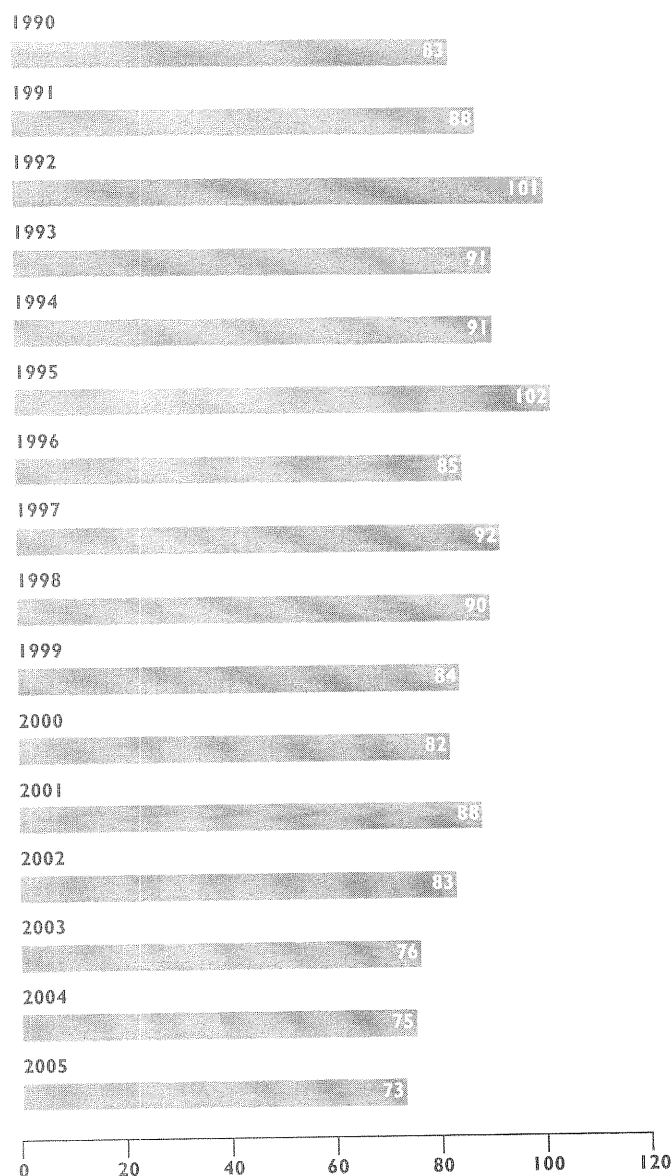


Source: Moultrie & Timaeus, 2003; Statistics South Africa, 2008; Udjo, 2003

Figure 3 tracks national trends in teenage fertility for the period 1980-2001. The estimates for 1980, 1985 and 1990 were reported in Udjo (2003). These estimates were derived from the 1970 census, birth registrations, and the 1995, 1997 and 1998 October Household Surveys. The estimates for 1996 and 2001 were derived from the 1996 and the 2001 census, discussed in Moultrie and Timaeus (2002). The estimates for 2007 were derived from the Community Survey (Statistics South Africa, 2008).

The composite estimates for the period indicate that there was a decline in teenage fertility throughout the 1980s, followed by a spike in the early 1990s. This spike coincided with the political transition taking place in the country at the time. The above trends were verified by a demographic surveillance site - Africa Centre for Health and Population Studies in rural KwaZulu-Natal. The figure below confirms a spike in fertility in the early 1990s, followed by a sustained decline in teenage fertility until 2005.

**Figure 4: Trends in teenage fertility-Africa Centre Demographic Surveillance System, 1990-2005**



Source: Moultrie & McGrath, 2007

Various recent data sources also indicate that teenage fertility in SA has declined over the past decade and may have levelled off after 2000. Using Census data and the 1998 SADHS, Moultrie and McGrath (2007)

demonstrated a 10 percent decrease in teenage fertility between 1996 (78 per 1000) and 2001 (65 per 1000). A further decline in teenage fertility (54 per 1000) is noted in the 2007 Community Survey (Statistics South Africa, 2008).

**Table 2: Teenage fertility rates (per 1000 women) by population group, 1996-2001**

DATA SOURCE	NATIONAL	AFRICAN	COLOURED	INDIAN	WHITE
1996 Census	78	86	68	24	19
1998 DHS	76	81	81	26	20
2001 Census	65	71	60	22	14

Source: Moultrie & McGrath, 2007

The 2003 RHRU survey reported that 15 percent of teenage women aged 15-19 had ever been pregnant. This is comparable with the results of the 1998 SADHS that showed that 13.2 percent of women aged 15-19 years had given birth or 16.4 percent had ever been pregnant (DOH, MRC & Measure DHS, 2002). The 2003 SADHS reported that pregnancy amongst 15-19 year olds declined from 16.4 percent in 1998 to 12 percent by 2003 (DOH, MRC & OrcMacro, 2007). However, problems with fieldwork in 2003 limit the quality and hence the reliability of the 2003 data.

Lessons from analysis of trends in fertility

Teenage fertility has been declining; however, at a slower pace than overall fertility. In addition, the two case studies show that teenage fertility is subject to fluctuations generated by the socio-political environment, more so than overall fertility that follows the classic trends predicted by the demographic transition from high to low fertility. As a result of these fluctuations, the share of overall births attributable to young people has risen over time. The main lesson is that strategies that seek to reduce teenage fertility should be contextualized to the socio-political environment.

Differentials

Data from the 1998 SADHS shows that fertility levels differ by age, location, educational level and population group (see Table 3).

**Table 3: Adolescent pregnancy and motherhood, South Africa, 1998**

Percentage of women 15 - 19 who are mothers or have ever been pregnant, by selected background characteristics, South Africa 1998.

BACKGROUND CHARACTERISTIC	PERCENTAGE WHO:		
	ARE MOTHERS	HAVE NEVER BEEN PREGNANT	NUMBER OF WOMEN
<b>Age</b>			
15	2.0	2.4	468
16	5.2	7.9	458
17	10.7	14.2	444
18	19.8	24.6	474
19	30.2	35.1	406
<b>Residence</b>			
Urban	10.5	12.5	1,197
Non-urban	16.3	20.9	1,052
<b>Province</b>			
Western Cape	13.7	16.4	195
Eastern Cape	14.8	18.2	369
Northern Cape	15.2	18.0	44
Free State	8.4	12.6	136
KwaZulu-Natal	13.8	16.7	457
North West	11.0	13.4	164
Gauteng	8.9	9.5	377
Mpumalanga	18.8	25.2	190
Northern	14.9	20.2	318
<b>Education</b>			
No education	*	*	19
Sub A - Std 3	24.7	29.2	114
Std 4 - Std 5	13.8	17.4	336
Std 6 - Std 9	12.9	16.3	1,542
Std 10	7.9	10.1	177
Higher	4.0	4.0	60
<b>Population group</b>			
African	14.2	17.8	1,802
Afr. urban	11.6	13.7	812
Afr. non-urban	16.4	21.1	990
Coloured	15.7	19.3	208
White	2.2	2.2	162
Asian	2.9	4.3	66
<b>Total</b>	<b>13.2</b>	<b>16.4</b>	<b>2,249</b>

**Note:** An asterisk indicates that a figure is based on fewer than 25 unweighted cases and has been suppressed

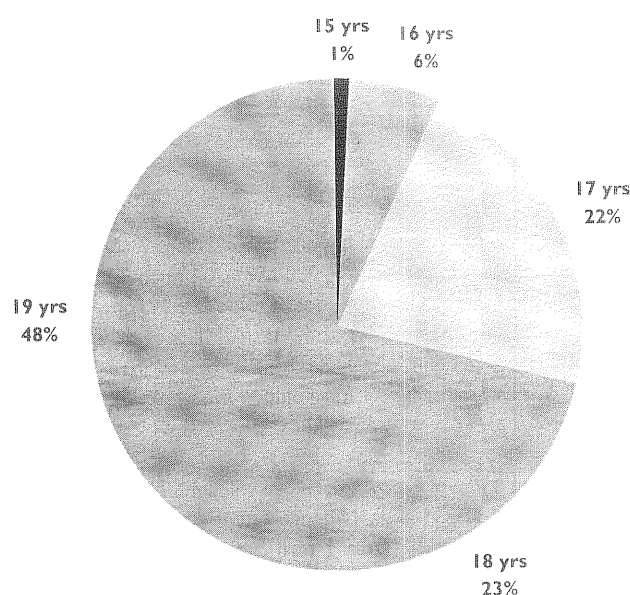
Source: South African Demographic and Health Survey, 1998

#### Age

National and international data show that fertility increases with age. In the US it is estimated that 822 000 pregnancies occurred in the 15-19 year age group in 2000; of these approximately two thirds were among 18-19 year olds (The Alan Guttmacher Institute, 2004). Studies conducted in Africa also confirm this relationship. For example, teenage pregnancy rates in Kenya double from 17 percent at ages 15-16 to 34 percent at ages 17-18 (Were, 2007).

As shown in Table 2, fertility in SA rises from a low of 2 percent among 15 year olds and peaks at 30.2 percent among 19 year olds (DOH, MRC & Measure DHS, 2002). Data from the 2003 RHRU survey also shows that teenagers aged 17-19 account for 93 percent of teenage fertility (see figure 5 below) (Harrison, 2008b).

**Figure 5: Pregnancy among 15-19 year olds by age, 2003**



Source: Harrison, 2008b

This finding is in keeping with the proportional increase in sexual activity with age. While only 10.1 percent of adolescents aged 15 are sexually active, by 19 years of age, 60.6 percent are sexually active (Shisana et al., 2005). Harrison (2008b) explains that the chance of falling pregnant increases with age. At the age of 15 the ratio of the number of girls reporting sexual activity to the number who fall pregnant is 13:1. This decreases to 7:1 at age 16 and to 3:1 from 17 years of age onwards. This may be related to increased levels of unprotected sex at older ages.

Lower levels of induced and spontaneous abortion among older adolescents may also contribute to higher pregnancy rates in this group (Darroch et al., 2001, Dryburgh, 2003). For example, data from France, Great Britain and Sweden show that the abortion ratio is substantially higher among adolescents aged 15-17 than that among those aged 18-19 (Darroch et al., 2001). Scholars have also attributed the higher pregnancy rates among older adolescents to biological and social changes. Biological changes such as physical maturity and higher hormone levels may result in greater sexual attractiveness and desire.

Social changes include greater peer pressure to have sex, changes in perceived norms about sexual and contraceptive behaviours as well as greater freedom and independence accompanied by more sexual opportunities (Kirby, 2002).

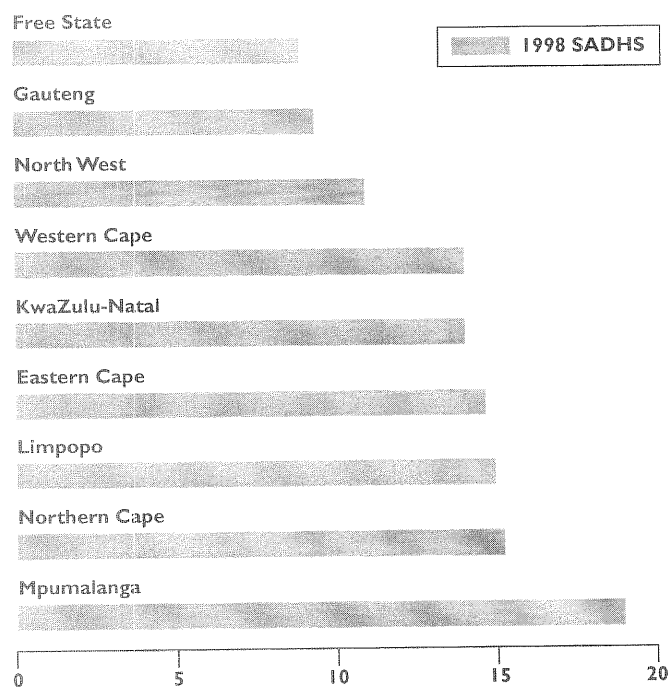
Location

Where young people reside confers significant risk for early pregnancy, STIs and HIV through a number of structural mechanisms – access to health services, concentration of poverty and unemployment and poor educational attainment. The contribution of these factors to early pregnancy is discussed in greater detail under the structural determinants of pregnancy.

**PROVINCE**

Free State, Gauteng and North West provinces had lower proportions of teenage fertility while Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, Limpopo and Eastern Cape reported high levels of early pregnancy (see Figure 6 below and Table 2 above).

**Figure 6: Percentage of women aged 15-19 who are mothers per province, 1998**



Source: South African Demographic and Health Survey, 1998

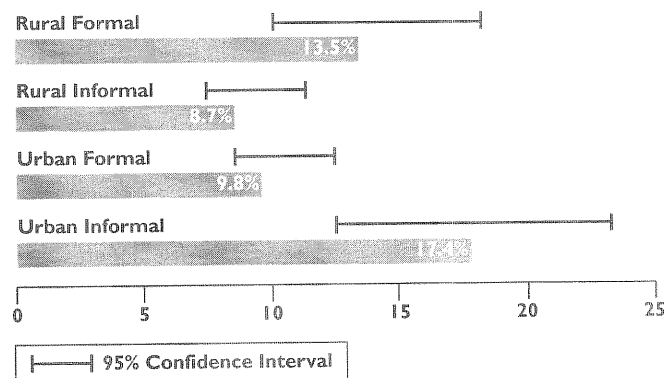
**URBAN-RURAL**

Overview of the World Fertility Surveys (WFS) and the DHS programmes indicate that fertility declines began in urban areas due to economic development and increasing access to education and contraception, and later moved onto rural areas. However, few studies have conducted rural/urban comparisons of teenage pregnancy (Snyder,

n.d.) and inconsistencies in how urban and rural areas are defined make interpretation and comparability difficult. The 1998 SADHS reported almost double the fertility rate among teenagers in rural settings (99 per 1000) than among those in urban settings (56 per 1000) (DOH, MRC & Measure DHS, 2002). The KZN Transitions to Adulthood study also reported higher rates of pregnancy in rural areas than in urban areas (Manzini, 2001).

Rapid urbanisation in SA has meant that a large percentage of the most disadvantaged sectors of society live in informal settlements on the fringes of urban areas. The most mobile sector of South African society is the youth, who migrate to urban centres in search of educational and work opportunities (Budlender, 2007). Over 15 percent (16.7%) of 15-24 year olds can be found in informal settlements (Harrison, 2008a; Stats SA, 2005). Figures increase to more than 30 percent in the urban hubs of Gauteng. Although the 1998 SADHS did not differentiate pregnancy by urban informal areas, data from the 2003 RHRU survey is indicative of the concentration of risky sexual behaviour in informal settlements. HIV prevalence among young people living in urban informal areas is double that of other geotypes (see Figure 7 below). Given the common antecedents of HIV and pregnancy, further investigation of pregnancy rates in urban informal areas is warranted.

**Figure 7: HIV prevalence by geography type among 15-24 year olds in South Africa, 2003**

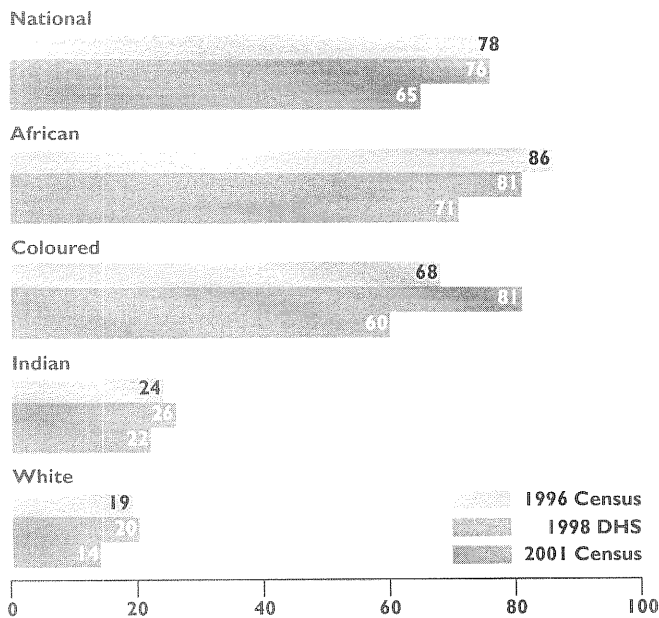


Source: Pettifor et al., 2004

Population group

The South African history of racial classification accompanied by gross inequalities in access to education and economic opportunities as well as health services is reflected in the teenage fertility rates. The teenage fertility rates of White (14 per 1000) and Indian (22 per 1000) South Africans mirror that of developed countries, while higher rates are reported among Coloured (60 per 1000) and African (71 per 1000) teenagers for the year 2001 (Moultrie & McGrath, 2007). However, as shown in Figure 8 below, fertility among 15-19 year olds declined in all population groups between 1996 and 2001. The largest decline was registered among the White population (-29.8%), followed by African (-16.8%), Coloured (-12.7%) and Indian (-7.8%) teenagers (Moultrie & Dorrington, 2004).

Figure 8: Teenage fertility by population group, 1996-2001



Source: Moultrie & McGrath, 2007

Education

Increasing access to education among women has been identified as one of the main reasons for the systematic decline in fertility since the 1970s. One of the greatest achievements since democracy in SA is the massive expansion in access to education, especially in the enrolment of African youth and women. Access to primary schooling is universal (104%) and secondary school enrolment (80%) is high (Schindler, 2008). Data from the 1998 SADHS shows a strong inverse relationship between education and teenage fertility (DOH, MRC & Measure DHS, 2002). Teenage mothers are concentrated among those with only primary education (38.5%) but declines progressively among those with some secondary education (12.9%), matric (7.9%) and those with higher education (4.0%) (see Table 2).

Despite the protective effect that schooling exerts over sexual behaviour (girls in school are less likely to be sexually active than girls out of school and are more likely to use contraception (NRC & IOM, 2005)), the risk of pregnancy in girls of school-going age increases. Data from 28 demographic and health surveys showed that countries in which enrolment were high were more likely to report pregnancy as a reason for school dropout (NRC & IOM, 2005). The converse is true for countries reporting low enrolment; girls will not be in school during their reproductive years. This relationship is clear when enrolment is below 20 percent but a mixed effect is evident when enrolment increases above 50 percent, suggesting that schooling, depending on the context, can have a mediating effect on reproductive health behaviour (NRC & IOM, 2005).

The South African schooling system is characterised by both high enrolment and high rates of repetition, dropout, late entry and re-entry meaning that a significant number of older learners, well past the onset of puberty, may be found in lower grades (Schindler, 2008). As a result,

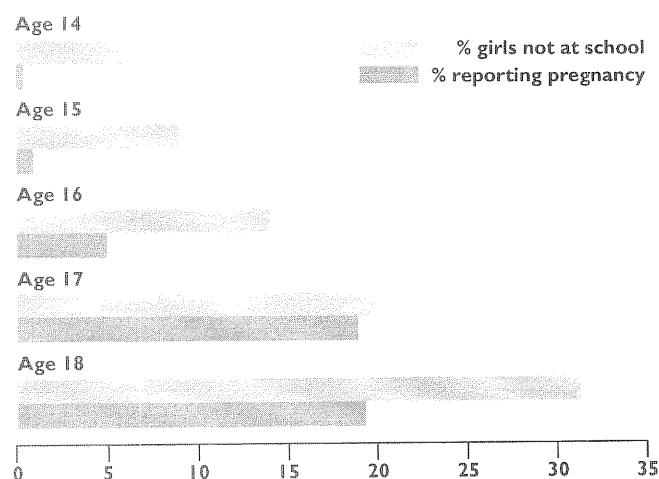
the system has had to accommodate traditionally high rates of teenage fertility. Studies have reported that over a third of girls below 19 years of age who experienced an early pregnancy were attending school in 1993 (Maharaj, Kaufman & Richter, 2000). A similar trend was evident in KwaZulu-Natal in 2001 (Hallman & Grant, 2003).

But the relationship that teenagers have with school can influence their sexual behaviour and as a result, early pregnancy. When teenagers feel a sense of attachment or connection to school and are successful at school, they are less likely to fall pregnant. School attachment, academic achievement and higher aspirations for education offer incentives to teenagers to avoid pregnancy (Kirby, 2002, Santelli, Lowry, Brener & Robin, 2000). On the other hand, when the relationship with schooling is tenuous, either through dislike of school (Imamura et al., 2007), poor academic achievement (Cassell, 2002) or poor expectations of furthering education (Imamura et al., 2007) girls are more likely to become pregnant.

While many studies report on pregnancy as the reason for school dropout, recent studies are contesting the direction of this relationship (Cassell, 2002). The KZN Transitions Study reported that for males, the inability to pay school fees (31%) and the need to work (22%) were the main reason for dropout, while for females, pregnancy (39%) and the inability to pay school fees (30%) were cited as reasons for dropout (Rutenberg et al., 2001). But the implicit assumption that girls who drop out of school because of pregnancy would have continued their education may not be valid (NRC & IOM, 2005). Pregnancy may be the endpoint most directly associated with dropout but is often not the cause. Pregnancy and school dropout in fact share many common social and economic antecedents (Lloyd & Mensch, 2008), the most significant of which are poverty and poor academic achievement (Cassell, 2002). Lloyd and Mensch (1999) contend that *“rather than pregnancy causing girls to drop out, the lack of social and economic opportunities for girls and women and the domestic demands placed on them coupled with the gender inequities of the education system, may result in unsatisfactory school experiences, poor academic performance, and acquiescence in or endorsement of early motherhood”*. Using the KZN Transitions data, Grant and Hallman (2006) showed that poor school performance is a strong marker of the increased likelihood of experiencing a pregnancy while enrolled in school and of dropping out of school at the time of pregnancy. Poor school performance also limits the likelihood that girls who experience a pregnancy would ever return to school.

Although the timing of school dropout and pregnancy coincide for some girls, for the most, pregnancy follows school dropout (Imamura et al., 2007) often due to poor academic performance resulting in a loss of interest in school (Manlove, 1998). In fact, Lloyd and Mensch (2008) demonstrated that the risk of leaving school due to childbearing and marriage has diminished significantly over time in Africa, alluding to the protective effect that schooling exerts on the social outcomes of young people. A similar trajectory of increased risk of pregnancy following school dropout is evident in SA. Harrison (2008b) demonstrated the increasing risk of pregnancy amongst those who were no longer at school by combining Census data with the 2003 RHRU survey (see Figure 9). The analysis showed that pregnancy increased significantly among 17 and 18 year olds outside of the school system.

**Figure 9: Increasing teenage pregnancy rates among those who are not at school**



Source: Harrison, 2008b

Similar evidence is available from rural SA. The odds of being pregnant among 14-19 year old school girls in Bushbuckridge were one tenth that of girls who had left the schooling system (Hargreaves et al., 2008). Dropping out of school not only increases risk of pregnancy, it also significantly increases risk of HIV. The 2003 RHRU survey showed that young women who did not complete their secondary school education were four times more likely to be HIV-positive compared to those who had completed high school (Pettifor et al., 2008). The study concluded that structural factors such as lack of education may play a more fundamental role in exacerbating risk of HIV; more so than individual level factors (Pettifor et al., 2008).

While SA is able to retain learners during the compulsory years of schooling, dropout increases dramatically from Grade 9 onwards, particularly for Coloured and African learners (DOE, 2007b). In a context of pervasive poverty, economic barriers play a significant role in school dropout. But two important and related markers of a high risk of dropping out are grade repetition and higher age for grade. These factors are also concentrated among Coloured and African learners. Data from the Cape Area Panel Study showed that by age 16-17, 49 percent of African males and 27 percent of Coloured males were two or more years behind the appropriate grade for age compared to only 7 per cent of White males (Lam, Leibbrandt & Mlatsheni, 2008). Without a system of remediation to improve school performance, learners become disillusioned and disengaged from the school environment, increasing the risk of dropout. In addition, as learners mature biologically, other non-school related goals (such as earning an income, forming relationships and raising a family) overtake education as their sole focus (DOE, 2007b). In the absence of age or developmentally-appropriate (rather than grade-appropriate) life-skills education on sexuality (Jewkes & Christofides, 2008), the risk of early pregnancy is heightened.

While a liberal school policy on teenage pregnancy has mitigated some of the consequences of early childbearing in SA, not all teen mothers remain in school or return to school. This may stem from uneven implementation of the school policy resulting in suspension or expulsion of pregnant teens, poor academic performance prior to pregnancy, few child-caring alternatives, poor support from families, peers and the school environment and the social stigma of being a

teenage mother (Cassell, 2002). The KZN Transitions Study reported that 74 percent of girls aged 14-19 years dropped out of school at the time of pregnancy and only 29 percent returned to school following pregnancy-related dropout (Grant & Hallman, 2006). What is more, for every year that passes after pregnancy-related school dropout, young women are significantly less likely to return to school (Grant & Hallman, 2006). The odds of returning to school among 14-24 year olds declines significantly by 60 percent two years post-dropout, by 70 percent three years post-dropout, and by 80 percent four years post-dropout.

Instituting strategies to retain learners in school by addressing both financial and school performance factors, as well as ensuring early return post-pregnancy, may be the most effective contributions that the education system can make to prevent and mitigate the impact of early pregnancy. When learners do drop out of school, concerted effort is required to re-enrol them in school or in alternative systems of education.

## SECONDARY ANALYSIS

### EMIS data

Using EMIS data for 2004-2008, the number of pregnant learners per 1 000 registered learners was estimated. For example, in 2004, the Education Department registered 51 pregnancies for every 1000 female learners. The table shows that there was a steady increase in the proportion of learners who had become pregnant during the period. It is not clear whether this represents a real increase in teenage pregnancy, or an improvement in the reporting process. While most national surveys have reported a decline in teenage fertility during the period, it should be noted that termination of pregnancy by all South African women increased during the period. According to Department of Health records, over 70 000 termination of pregnancies were reported in South African public health facilities during the year 2003, representing a 200 percent increase in terminations since 1997 (Makiwane, 2009). About 30 percent of terminations were among women aged 15 to 19. It is therefore possible that the national decline in teenage fertility may be in part accounted for by an increase in termination of pregnancy rather than a decline in teenage pregnancy. However, this would need to be confirmed empirically. It is not known, though, if the pregnancy statistics reported in the EMIS data includes pregnancies that were terminated. Our assessment of the EMIS data is that it most likely approximates fertility (i.e. live births) as pregnancies are more likely to be reported/discovered late into the gestation period, well past the period for safe termination.

**Table 4: Learner pregnancy rates, 2004-2008**

YEAR	NUMBER OF PREGNANT LEARNERS / 1 000 REGISTERED	NUMBER OF LEARNERS CAPTURED
2004	51.42	8058
2005	55.69	9691
2006	56.34	9031
2007	59.51	16336
2008	62.81	16320
<b>Total</b>	<b>58.22</b>	<b>59436</b>



The table below provides a provincial breakdown of the number of pregnancies per 1000 learners. A consistent pattern of high pregnancy rates are reported for provinces that are poor and mostly rural (Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Limpopo), and a reverse is evident for the most affluent and urban provinces (Gauteng and Western Cape). This contrast is more distinct than the teenage fertility data reported in the 1998 SADHS.

**Table 5: Learner pregnancy rates per province, 2004-2008**

PROVINCE	NUMBER OF PREGNANT LEARNERS / 1 000 REGISTERED	NUMBER OF LEARNERS CAPTURED
Eastern Cape	68.81	11 852
Free State	53.64	2 837
Gauteng	34.15	4 866
KwaZulu-Natal	62.24	15 027
Limpopo	60.36	12 848
Mpumalanga	55.70	5 015
Northern Cape	59.37	1 070
North West	55.89	3 211
Western Cape	34.40	2 710
<b>Total</b>	<b>58.22</b>	<b>59 436</b>

In the following section, learner pregnancy rates are disaggregated by selected variables that characterise the school environment. As stated above, EMIS data records are incomplete. The table below shows the extent of missing data for the selected factors. As a result of the incompleteness of data, the analysis below must be read with caution.

**Table 6: Selected variables and the proportion of missing data**

SELECTED CHARACTERISTICS OF THE SCHOOL	PROPORTION MISSING DATA
Institutional phase	21.3
School specialisation	20.1
Land ownership	21.4
School fees	61.8

As a census of pregnancies in all schools was not done, a single estimate of the number of pregnancies recorded for every 1 000 female learners cannot be provided. Because the analysis outlined below is applicable to a sample of schools, the single value estimate of learner pregnancies is supported by a wider interval that is likely to include the 'true' estimate. This is referred to in the table as the 95% Confidence Interval for the Mean. For example, the estimated level of pregnancies for primary schools is 57.42 (55.39-59.45); for intermediate schools the estimate is 56.41 (54.06-58.75) and for combined schools the estimate is 78.13 (76.71-79.54). As the confidence interval of primary and intermediate schools overlap, we make the conclusion that there are no significant differences in the mean number of pregnancies between primary and intermediate schools. On the other hand, as the confidence interval for combined

schools does not overlap with the confidence interval for either primary or intermediate schools, we are 95 percent confident that combined schools have higher learner pregnancy rates.

## INSTITUTIONAL PHASE

Most schools in SA are either exclusively primary schools (Grade 1 to Grade 7) or secondary schools (Grade 8 to Grade 12). A minority of schools, however, combine both primary and secondary grades, and are known as combined schools. The analysis below shows differences in pregnancy rates according to these classifications.

**Table 7: Distribution of learner pregnancy by institutional phase**

INSTITUTIONAL PHASE	N	MEAN	95% CONFIDENCE INTERVAL FOR MEAN	
			LOWER BOND	UPPER BOND
Primary	4 290	57.42	55.39	59.45
Intermediate	2 349	56.41	54.06	58.75
Combined	9 349	78.13	76.71	79.54
Secondary	30 554	51.94	51.38	52.49
<b>Total</b>	<b>46 547</b>	<b>57.92</b>	<b>57.40</b>	<b>58.44</b>

The table above shows that pregnancy rates do not differ significantly between learners in primary, intermediate or secondary schools. The major difference is found in combined schools, where the pregnancy rate tends to be significantly higher than in other schools.

## SCHOOL SPECIALISATION

The second attribute used to differentiate pregnancy rates was based on the level of specialisation of the school. Ordinary schools provide academic programmes; comprehensive schools provide both academic and vocational training; and specialised schools cater for learners with some form of disability.

**Table 8: Distribution of learner pregnancy by level of specialisation**

LEVEL OF SPECIALISATION	N	MEAN	95% CONFIDENCE INTERVAL FOR MEAN	
			LOWER BOND	UPPER BOND
Ordinary	37 766	60.23	59.64	60.82
Comprehensive	4 241	55.78	54.05	57.50
Specialised	2 362	43.90	42.10	45.69
<b>Total</b>	<b>44 369</b>	<b>58.93</b>	<b>58.39</b>	<b>59.47</b>

Learners in specialised schools are least likely to experience an early pregnancy compared to those who are in ordinary or comprehensive schools.

## SCHOOL FEES

**Table 9: Distribution of learner pregnancy by school fees**

SCHOOL FEES	N	MEAN	95 % CONFIDENCE INTERVAL FOR MEAN	
			LOWER BOND	UPPER BOND
No-fee School	13 529	62.52	61.48	63.55
User fee School	9 046	48.56	47.55	49.58
<b>Total</b>	<b>22 575</b>	<b>56.92</b>	<b>56.18</b>	<b>57.67</b>

The above table disaggregates schools according to whether they are a fee or a no fee school. Generally, schools that are situated in poorer socio-economic neighbourhoods have been proclaimed in SA as no fee schools. The above table shows that schools in poor neighbourhoods have a higher pregnancy rate than those in more affluent areas.

## LAND OWNERSHIP

**Table 10: Distribution of learner pregnancy by school land ownership**

LAND OWNERSHIP	N	MEAN	95 % CONFIDENCE INTERVAL FOR MEAN	
			LOWER BOND	UPPER BOND
Public ownership	23 093	53.86	53.13	54.58
Independent ownership	920	69.72	65.22	74.22
<b>Total</b>	<b>24 013</b>	<b>54.46</b>	<b>53.74</b>	<b>55.18</b>

Learners in schools that have land that is publicly owned have a lower chance of experiencing an early pregnancy than those in schools that have land privately owned. Schools on independently-owned land are most likely to be farm schools. Higher pregnancy rates in these schools may be a reflection of higher levels of poverty in these areas.

The above analysis shows that pregnancy rates in schools vary significantly according to the school characteristics identified above. However, as indicated earlier, results must be read with caution due to the high proportion of missing data. An indicator of no-fee schools was used as a marker of the socio-economic status of the neighbourhood. Specifically, no-fee schools are located in poor neighbourhoods and these schools tended to report higher pregnancy rates. This finding concurs with the secondary analysis conducted on the HSRC 2003 Status of the Youth Survey confirming a link between poverty and risk for early pregnancy. In addition, the determinants section outlines the extent to which community factors such as poverty and low socio-economic status increase the risk for early pregnancy.

The second set of findings is more interesting. The results outlined above show that learners from combined schools have higher pregnancy rates. Combined schools have learners who have a vast difference in age. This condition is thought to skew power relations among learners, and likely to result in higher pregnancy rates. Girls who engage in sex with older partners are more likely to become pregnant (Kirby, 2007). A big gap in age in the same institution is associated with conditions that give rise to higher pregnancy rates.

### Provincial data

Meaningful analysis of pregnancy rates reported at provincial level was not possible for the following reasons:

- Some provincial reports only provide number of pregnancies without enrolment rates. These figures are thus unusable, as number of pregnancies can only be analysed against the background of the number of women who were at risk of experiencing a pregnancy.
- The fertility rates fluctuate widely from one year to another. The general trend is that the number of pregnancies reported increases with time. All indications are that this is due to the improvement in the reporting mechanism rather than an escalation in learner pregnancy. Firstly, the earlier pregnancy rates suggested from school records are considerably lower than those reported in national surveys. Secondly, all national surveys have been reporting a decline in pregnancy rates during this period.
- The level of missing information significantly compromises meaningful analyses. In addition, the level of missing information varies between provinces. The impression is that the fidelity with which vital statistics are collected at provincial level varies greatly.

## SUGGESTIONS FOR IMPROVING DATA COLLECTION

A revision in the choice of data collected is strongly suggested. The following variables would allow for meaningful differentiation of pregnancy rates at the school and community level:

- Variables related to the nature of the school: failure rate, school dropout rates, learner-teacher ratio etc.
- Characteristics of the school neighbourhood: school fee structure, urban-rural status, formal-informal environment, historical racial categorisation.
- Variables that locate schools within Statistics South Africa enumeration areas would allow a link between the school and other variables found in national data sets.
- In order to assess the effectiveness of the school policy that allows mothers/fathers to return to school post-pregnancy, data is also required on number of girls/boys who drop out of school because of pregnancy, educational attainment of pregnant teens, number who return post-pregnancy, number of teen parents who complete secondary schooling, academic performance of teen parents etc.

## ABORTION

Restrictive laws and policies concerning abortion, particularly in developing countries, have resulted in many unwanted pregnancies and an escalation in obstetric complications and maternal deaths due to botched 'backstreet' procedures (WHO, 2004). Unsafe abortions pose a significant risk to the health of young women in developing countries (NRC & IOM, 2005). Every year, between 2.2-4 million unsafe abortions are undertaken by adolescents in developing countries (UNFPA, 2007).

While abortion on request is legally available in the US and UK and other developed countries, in Africa and in many developing countries abortion is still illegal and fraught with taboos and negative social perceptions. SA is one of a few countries in Africa where abortion is available on request in the first trimester. Other countries are Mozambique (although with restrictions), Cape Verde, Ethiopia and Tunisia (IPAS, 2009).

Prior to 1996, illegal abortions were common in SA and the majority of these were performed in the African communities (Morrone, Myer & Tibazarwa, 2006). A study conducted in 1994 reported that of 44 868 women attending public hospitals with incomplete abortion, at least a third presented with signs and symptoms of unsafe procedures (Rees et al., 1997). These findings, together with a commitment to promote the reproductive rights of women motivated the passing of The Choice of Termination of Pregnancy (TOP) Act in SA in 1996. The Act permits a woman of any age to terminate a pregnancy during the first 12 weeks of gestation without the consent of her partner, under restrictions between 13-20 weeks and under special circumstances beyond 20 weeks. Minors (women aged less than 18) can terminate pregnancies without the consent of parents. Termination of pregnancy services are conducted at designated facilities, can be conducted by midwives and registered nurses and are available free of charge.

Despite legalising abortion in 1996, statistics on abortions in SA are still difficult to obtain. Three years after enacting legislation the health system was providing 40 000 legal terminations each year (Reproductive Rights Alliance, 1999). By 2003, this had increased to about 70 000 per year (Makiwane, 2009). Since the introduction of the TOP legislation in 1997 about 529 410 women have had safe and legal abortions in SA (IPAS, 2009). This is compared with about 800-1000 legal abortions conducted annually by *Apartheid SA*, most of which were granted to White women (Anon, 1991). In 1999, only 292 facilities or less than 3 percent of public health facilities were designated to provide abortion services, and only a third was actually providing services (Dickson et al., 2003). By 2007/8, 70 percent of hospitals approved to provide TOP were actually providing services (DOH, 2008a).

Survey data on termination of pregnancy among young women indicate that a very small percentage makes use of these services (3%) even though two thirds of pregnancies are unwanted (Pettifor et al., 2005). This is in contrast to data from the Department of Health that shows that 30 percent of abortions conducted in 2003 were for women aged 15-19 (Makiwane, 2009). Qualitative research indicates that abortion is common among schoolgirls and university students, although legal termination is seldom a consideration (Kaufman, de Wet & Stadler, 2001; Varga, 2002). In fact, a case control study among pregnant adolescents in Cape Town reported that over a third (34.1%) had considered termination of pregnancy (Jewkes, Vundule, Maforah & Jordaan, 2001).

#### *Barriers to legal abortion*

Although abortion is recognised as morally and religiously objectionable, young women in SA apply a 'relative morality' to justify

decisions about abortion (Varga, 2002). Stigma about abortion is tempered by the context in which girls find themselves. To circumvent the social and financial hardships associated with unplanned pregnancies and to protect educational opportunities, young women consider it a viable option. Yet two qualitative studies have suggested that legal termination may not be an option (Kaufman et al., 2001; Varga, 2002). Young people, particularly in rural areas have poor knowledge about the legality and cost of abortion services. The 1998 SADHS showed that knowledge about the TOP Act was low among teenagers (40.1%), and particularly, among uneducated women and women living in rural areas (DOH, MRC & Measure DHS, 2002). Focus group discussions conducted among adolescents in rural Limpopo province also reported low levels of knowledge about TOP (Ratlabala, Makofane & Jali, 2007). Although a more recent clinic-based study in KwaZulu-Natal showed that knowledge levels had improved generally among women since the 1998 SADHS, a third of women were not aware of the legislation (Morrone et al., 2006). Furthermore, of those who were aware of the legislation about half were not aware of the time restriction for legally terminating a pregnancy. Due to a lack of support and information about the Act, many young women only seek abortion late into their pregnancy (NRC & IOM, 2005), forcing them to resort to illegal alternatives.

The double stigma of an early pregnancy and termination also serves as a deterrent for young women to seek abortion at a clinic or hospital (Varga, 2002). This is compounded by the negative attitude of health staff both towards early pregnancy and termination (Jewkes et al., 2005). Adolescents in Limpopo province also commented on the 'harsh treatment that pregnant adolescents receive from health providers' and the lack of confidentiality in local clinics and hospitals (Ratlabala et al., 2007). Termination of pregnancy is seldom an individual decision. Mothers or older females in the family play a significant role in deciding about termination, which is often motivated by the need to protect the 'good name of the family' (Varga, 2002). Partners also influence the decision based on their own concerns for school disruption and financial reasons. However, one of the most critical factors that determine if an early pregnancy will be aborted in the African community is the acceptance or rejection of paternity (Varga, 2002). Acceptance of paternity means financial support, as well as social and cultural connection for the child. Rejection, on the other hand, compromises a girl's and her family's moral standing in the community. In the latter case, abortion, albeit illegal, becomes a real option.

Although studies have reported on the positive impact that the legislation has had on abortion-related morbidity and mortality in SA (Jewkes & Rees, 2005; Jewkes et al., 2005), much more needs to be done to make services accessible and acceptable to young people. In the most basic form, young people and the important decision makers in their lives – older women and young men, in particular, lack basic information about the Act and its specifications. Although value clarification among health workers did precede the introduction of the Act, ensuring that TOP is available as part of the Adolescent Friendly Clinics Initiative (NAFCI) will assist young people in viewing legal termination as a viable option.

## CONSEQUENCES OF EARLY CHILDBEARING

While a number of studies in the US have commented on the consequences of early childbearing on the life course of adolescents, few studies have been conducted in sub-Saharan Africa. Yet the outcome of teenage pregnancy can be vastly different depending on the context (Falk, Ostlund, Magnuson, Schollin, & Nilsson, 2006) because of the inextricable link between poverty and childbearing. Poverty is now recognised as both a cause and consequence of early childbearing (Kirby, 2007). Earlier research may have overestimated the consequences of early childbearing because of the assumption that poverty and socio-economic disruption were a consequence of teenage pregnancy (Kirby, 2007). But the wealth of research demonstrating association and causality between socio-economic disadvantage and pregnancy makes it difficult to attribute negative life events to early pregnancy alone as opposed to pre-existing disadvantage. This is particularly the case in sub-Saharan African countries that experience inordinate levels of poverty (Hoffman, 2006; NRC, & IOM, 2005). However, the general consensus is that since teenage pregnancy is mostly unplanned (Cassel, 2002; Pettifor et al., 2004), and often coincides with other transitions such as schooling it can result in negative consequences for the teenage mother and more especially for the child (Ashcraft and Lang, 2002; Kirby, 2007; Finer & Henshaw, 2006). Table 11 summarises the health and socio-economic consequences of teenage pregnancy.

**Table 11: Consequences of early childbearing**

HEALTH CONSEQUENCES	ECONOMIC CONSEQUENCES
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Elevated risks of maternal death</li> <li>• Elevated risk of obstetrics complications</li> <li>• Low birth weight</li> <li>• High risk of infant mortality</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lower family income</li> <li>• Increased dependency ratio</li> <li>• Exacerbated poverty</li> <li>• Children most likely to be poor</li> </ul>
EDUCATION CONSEQUENCES	SOCIAL CONSEQUENCES
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• School dropout</li> <li>• School absenteeism</li> <li>• Poor academic performance</li> <li>• Lower educational attainment</li> <li>• Poorer cognitive development of children</li> <li>• Poorer educational outcomes for children</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stigma and discrimination</li> <li>• Less likely to be married</li> <li>• Most likely to suffer abuse</li> <li>• Less supportive and stimulating home environment for children</li> <li>• Increased behaviour problems among children</li> <li>• Higher rates of imprisonment among sons</li> <li>• Children more likely to give birth as teenagers</li> </ul>

Source: Breheny & Stephens, 2007; Hoffman, 2006; Kirby, 2007

### HEALTH CONSEQUENCES

There is conflicting evidence on the health risks associated with teenage pregnancy. While some studies suggest that pregnancy before the age of 20

carries more health risks than pregnancies at older ages, others suggest that the greatest risk are for those at younger ages, if any at all (NRC & IOM, 2005). Risks associated with physiological immaturity include cephalo-pelvic disproportion, toxemia, hypertension and vagio-rectal or urethral fistulae and placental abruption (Blum, 2007; Blum & Nelson-Mmari, 2004). Estimates provided by UNFPA (2007) indicate that the risk of death after pregnancy for women aged 15-19 is twice that of those aged 20-24. Annually up to 70 000 15-19 year old girls world-wide die due to pregnancy- and childbirth-related complications (UNFPA, 2007). The health consequences of early pregnancy are 600 times higher in sub-Saharan Africa than in developed countries (Blum, 2007). Studies conducted in SA in the 1980s and 1990s reported similar health consequences for early childbearing (Gallais, 1996; Goldberg & Craig, 1983).

Much of the health risks associated with early motherhood can be prevented through timely and good quality antenatal care. The health outcomes of pregnancy are worse for women aged 15-19 for three main reasons (UNFPA, 2007):

- 1) Young women may not know when and where to seek help and may not have the financial resources or the necessary family support;
- 2) Adolescent girls may only initiate antenatal care at a later stage than those who planned their pregnancies; and
- 3) The quality of health services available to pregnant teenagers may not be optimal.

Even though teen pregnancy is common among Coloured and African adolescents in SA, it is still highly stigmatised. Young women refer to the trauma that they experience when they realise that they are pregnant and the difficulty they face in deciding who to tell and what to do, as well as the negative response they receive from family and friends (Kaufman et al., 2001; Varga, 2003). Antenatal care has been available to pregnant women without charge since 1994. Yet the embarrassment and discrimination that young women face within the health care system is a deterrent to seeking care early in their pregnancy (Kaufman et al., 2001; Varga, 2002).

The research findings on adverse health outcomes of children born to teenage mothers are more definitive (NRC & IOM, 2005). International studies indicate that children of teen mothers are more likely to experience health problems compared to children of older mothers (Shaw et al., 2006). Low birth weight is associated with negative outcomes later in life such as cognitive and physical disabilities and lower educational attainment (DeVilliers, 2004). Studies in the US (Botting, Rosato & Wood, 1998; National Campaign To Prevent Teen Pregnancy, 2002) and UK (Pevalin, 2003) report lower birth weight among infants born to teen mothers. South African studies also support this claim (Cameron, Richter, McIntyre, Dlamini & Garstang, 1996). Low birth weight is a significant risk factor for infant mortality. In fact, low birth weight is the number two killer among South African children under five, second only to HIV and AIDS (Bradshaw, Bourne & Nannan, 2003). Breast feeding is crucial for the early development of a baby. Studies conducted in the US have indicated that women with mistimed and unwanted pregnancies are less likely to breastfeed (Chandra et al., 2005; Dye et al., 1997). In addition, children of teen mothers are more likely to be malnourished and suffer from developmental problems (UNFPA, 2007).

Child mortality is a critical indicator of the health and state of development of a population. Although SA is economically developed compared to other African states, its child mortality is increasing. In 1990

the under-5 mortality was 60 per 1000 live births; by 2000 this had increased to 95 per 1000 live births (Bradshaw, Bourne & Nannan, 2003). No doubt HIV and AIDS is a critical determinant of increasing infant and child mortality but nevertheless early childbearing is an important contributor to both infant and child mortality (UNFPA, 2007).

## EDUCATIONAL AND ECONOMIC CONSEQUENCES

South Africa has one of the highest literacy levels exceeding many other countries in sub-Saharan Africa. In a knowledge-based economy, education is essential to secure future employment. Teenage pregnancy can have a profound impact on young mothers and their children by placing limits on their educational achievement and economic stability and predisposing them to single parenthood and marital instability in the future (Ashcraft and Lang, 2006; National Campaign to Prevent Teen Pregnancy, 2002; Olausson, Haglund, Weitloft & Cnattingius, 2001). 'The price of adolescent pregnancy is lost potential' (UNFPA, 2007) because teenagers become mothers without the necessary knowledge, skills, resources, and networks to cope with the demands of parenthood.

The impact of teenage pregnancies on educational achievement and economic progress later in life remains negative and significant even after controlling for other social factors such as coming from a disadvantaged background (Klepinger, Lundberg & Plotnick, 1995). Teenage mothers tend to have fewer years of education compared to those who have their first child after 20 years of age (Berglas, Brindis & Cohen, 2003; Fergusson and Woodard, 2000; Klepinger et al., 1995). Fergusson and Woodward (2000) postulate that the impact of teenage pregnancy on young women's educational achievement is driven by the timing of the pregnancy and the manner in which the young woman and her family respond to the pregnancy. Despite the progressive legislation in SA allowing young women to return to school post-pregnancy only around a third actually re-enter the schooling system (Grant & Hallman, 2006). Data is not available in SA on the number of teen mothers who go on to complete school or on their academic achievement.

Early childbearing requires strong familial support for girls to return to school. Studies in the US have shown that child-rearing, lack of parental support and lack of support from peers, all contribute to high dropout rates (Cassell, 2002). In fact Grant and Hallman (2006) have shown that the availability of an adult caregiver in the home was a strong determinant of whether girls in SA would return to school post-pregnancy. When girls were solely responsible for childcare they were less likely to return to school. Qualitative research indicates that some families enable girls to return to school to protect their educational opportunities, but for others, new familial responsibilities limit such possibilities (Kaufman et al., 2001).

Ultimately due to larger families and low education, the labour force earnings of mothers who are teens or who had an early teenage pregnancy are not satisfactory (Berglas et al. 2003; Hoffman, 2006). Thus young mothers are barred by a lack of education and inexperience from earning a sound living (Bissell, 2000). The disruption that pregnancy inflicts on the educational and occupational outcomes of young mothers both maintains and exacerbates poverty. Research conducted in US indicates that more than a quarter of teen mothers live in poverty well into their twenties compared to 7 percent of their peers who delayed childbearing (Darroch and Singh, 1999). Early childbearing may not necessarily lead to poverty, but it certainly can worsen the

economic situation of young women (Cassell, 2002; Shaw et al., 2006). As a result of the lower earning capacity of teen mothers, they are more likely than their peers to receive child welfare for a longer period (National Campaign to Prevent Teen Pregnancy, 2002). Ironically, despite the availability of the CSG in SA and assertions that young women are falling pregnant to receive the grant, in 2005, only 2.69 percent of grant recipients were mothers between the age of 15 and 19 years (Makiwane, Desmond, Richter & Udjo, 2006).

## SOCIAL CONSEQUENCES

The age old practice of sending pregnant girls away to live with relatives has been replaced by pregnant girls remaining in their homes, choosing to raise their children and continuing to attend school (Wiemann, Rickert, Berenson & Volk, 2005). Adolescents who become pregnant are therefore highly visible in the community, in school and to families (Wiemann et al., 2005), often erroneously leading to the conclusion that teen pregnancy is increasing. But increased visibility also means increased stigma. Because of the relation of teen pregnancy, contraceptive use, HIV and STIs to sexuality, it will forever remain bounded with morality and stigma. Stigma during or after pregnancy can lead to depression, social exclusion, low self-esteem and poor academic performance affecting future employment prospects (Abe & Zane, 1990).

Despite the normalisation of teen pregnancy in African and Coloured communities in SA, in part related to high prevalence and to some extent cultural acceptance previously, early childbearing is highly stigmatised. Girls report the trauma, fear, shame, and embarrassment of having to reveal an early pregnancy to family, partners and peers. In studying third generation pregnancies in the Birth to Twenty longitudinal cohort in Soweto, Richter, Norris and Ginsburg (2006) commented on the 'silence of fear and shame' that lock families into inaction in both preventing pregnancy and accessing health care services once girls become pregnant. Even though girls are legally allowed to attend school during and after pregnancy in SA, they are often confronted by the stigma of teachers and peers in the school environment (Varga, 2003).

Teenage pregnancy also affects the marriage prospects of young women. Studies carried out in the US have reported that teen mothers are more likely to be single parents and if married to experience high divorce rates (Ashcraft and Lang, 2006; National Campaign to Prevent Teen Pregnancy, 2002; UNFPA, 2007). Premarital fertility is high in SA, and in the African and Coloured communities, it does not necessarily lead to marriage. However, acknowledgement of paternity is critical to reduce stigma of early pregnancy and for the child to receive social and financial support from the father. Ironically, women report that young fathers often deny paternity to protect their own educational and financial aspirations. (Varga, 2003). This is in contrast to more recent studies among young men, who report high levels of responsibility for children and that few deny paternity (Swartz & Bhana, 2009).

Women who begin childbearing in their teenage years are at increased risk of having more children over a short space of time. In the US, 25 percent of teenage mothers have another child within two years of the first child (National Campaign to Prevent Teen Pregnancy, 2002). SA deviates from this norm. Although age at first birth is low in SA, women significantly delay second birth. Using data from the Agincourt surveillance system, Garenne, Tollman and Kahn (2000) showed a bimodal pattern of fertility among young women, with a first peak in the

teenage years and a second in the mid-to late 20s. Studies have also reported much higher contraceptive use among those teenagers who have had an early pregnancy. MacPhail and colleagues (2007) reported that pregnancy was a significant determinant of contraceptive use among women aged 15-24 years in SA. Qualitative research indicates that educational aspirations are a significant reason why young women delay second birth (Kaufman et al., 2001) in SA.

Teenage pregnancy has also been associated with domestic violence and family disruptions (Kissin et al., 2008). Studies from sub-Saharan Africa, US and Europe have indicated that teenage mothers face a high frequency of physical abuse (UNFPA, 2007). Teenage pregnancy feeds into existing gender imbalances by rendering young mothers more economically vulnerable and reliant on male partners, thus exposing them to negative trajectories (UNFPA, 2007). Given the almost endemic levels of sexual and physical violence in intimate partner relationships

in SA - both risk factors for early pregnancy (Jewkes et al., 2001), such negative trajectories are likely to exist among young mothers.

The most negative and costly outcomes of teenage pregnancy are intergenerational (Kirby, 2007). Children of teenage mothers are more likely to drop out of school, obtain lower grade point averages and report poorer school attendance records (Cassell, 2002; Kirby, 2007). Research from the National Study on Family Growth (2002) indicates that the characteristics of the adolescent mother have an impact on the timing of first birth of her children. For teenagers whose mother had an adolescent birth, 32 percent had given birth by the age of 20 compared to 11 percent of those whose mothers delayed child bearing beyond 20 years of age. In this way the intergenerational transmission of poverty is perpetuated between mothers and daughters (Botting et al., 1998; Cassell, 2002; Kiernan, 1995). For sons, teenage motherhood increases the risk of behaviour problems and, particularly, for imprisonment (Hoffman, 2006).

## DETERMINANTS

### CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK

There is a substantial body of literature about the varied, inter-related and complex interplay of factors that determine sexual behaviour and that result in pregnancy, STIs and HIV (Dogan-Ates & Carrion-Basham, 2007; Kirby, 1997; Meade & Ickovics, 2005). Sexuality among teenagers, often characterised as, and associated with deviance, is in fact a healthy, normative part of the natural course of development of *all* adolescents. As such, at some stage of their life, nearly all teenagers experience some pressure to have sex, whether it be internally- or externally-driven, and may be at risk of becoming pregnant (Kirby, 2002). However, some adolescents are placed at much higher risk than others based on the balance between risk and protective factors. As the number of risk factors increase and the number of protective factors decrease in a teenager's life, the probability of engaging in unprotected sex and becoming pregnant increases.

Over half a century of investment in public health research has demonstrated that health behaviour is seldom the result of single, individually attributable factors. Although a number of behavioural theories (such as Health Belief Model (Rosenstock, 1974), Theory of Planned Behaviour (Ajzen & Fishbein, 1980), Social Cognitive Theory (Bandura, 1986), have been helpful in identifying individual cognitions that influence sexual behaviour, they have not resulted in substantive and sustained behaviour change. Contemporary health promotion has undergone a paradigm shift from that of a singular focus on health education for individuals, to changing institutional behaviour, influencing physical and social environments and advocating for enabling and supportive policy (National Cancer Institute, 2005). Such an *ecological approach* recognises the multiple spheres of influence on health behaviour and emanates from the seminal work of Bronfenbrenner (1979) that contextualised individual behaviour within the families, communities and societies in which they are nested.

Some of these influences are more direct or *proximal* (such as perception of risk, knowledge, attitudes, beliefs, subjective norms, self-efficacy and intention). Yet others are indirect or *distal* (such as poverty and socio-economic status), mediated by more proximal factors but nonetheless powerful determinants of behaviour. The approach also recognises that behaviour takes place in a dynamic social context. Individuals are seldom passive recipients of external influence from the social environment. Termed *reciprocal causation*, the ecological perspective asserts that social environments are as much shaped by individual behaviour as individual behaviour is shaped by the social environment, and that the context in which behaviour takes place is constantly evolving (National Cancer Institute, 2005).

While a range of factors that influence risky sexual behaviour have been identified, the weight that can be assigned to any single factor (Kirby, 2002) or how factors interact or act cumulatively to increase risk is not fully understood (Meade & Ickovics, 2005). Behaviour change programmes have shown successes in small, localised contexts but what is not clear is how to achieve radical behaviour change among sufficiently large numbers of people at risk, in changing contexts and over time, to drive down the rate of unprotected sex (Coates, Richter & Caceres, 2008), and consequently, teenage pregnancy, STIs and HIV. The ecological systems model provides a useful way to organise factors

associated with complex social problems such as teenage pregnancy (Cocoran, 1999). The conceptual framework used in this study adopts a multi-level approach to account for the complex web of personal, social, economic and cultural forces that influence the life trajectory of adolescents and subsequently, their behaviour (Cassell, 2002). Five levels of influence are considered: (1) intrapersonal or individual factors; (2) interpersonal or relational factors; (3) institutional or organisational factors; (4) structural factors; and (5) public policy (see Table 3).

**Table 12: An ecological perspective: levels of influence**

CONCEPT	DEFINITION
<b>PROXIMAL FACTORS</b>	
<b>Intrapersonal level</b>	Individual characteristics that influence behaviour, such as knowledge, attitudes, beliefs and personality traits.
<b>Intrapersonal level</b>	Interpersonal processes and primary groups, including family, friends, and peers that provide social identity, support and role definition.
<b>Community level Institutional or organisational factors</b>	Rules, regulations, policies and informal structures, which may constrain or promote recommended behaviours.
<b>DISTAL FACTORS</b>	
<b>Structural factors</b>	Socio-economic conditions and the cultural context of the society that may either enable, or serve as a barrier to, healthy behaviour
<b>Public policy</b>	Local and national laws that regulate or support healthy actions and practices for prevention, early detection, treatment, care and support.

Source: Adapted from McLeroy et al., 1988 in National Cancer Institute, 2005

Each level of influence can have an effect on sexual behaviour and, in turn, pregnancy. For example, a young woman delays accessing contraception even though she is sexually active. At the *individual level*, she may have incomplete knowledge about types of contraception and how to use them. At the *interpersonal level*, her partner may refuse to use contraception, labelling it a trust issue, her peers may not believe that it is important to use contraception and her parents may not have discussed contraception with her. At the *institutional level*, access to contraception may be difficult at public clinics because of the judgemental attitude of health staff. At the *structural level*, she may come from a poor socio-economic background where educational and financial aspirations are stunted and the only opportunity for upward mobility is through a relationship. At the *policy level*, lack of policy on youth friendly services or poor implementation therefore may affect her ability to access contraception.

## LITERATURE REVIEW

The following sub-sections explore each of the systemic levels in more detail, highlighting the key determinants of teenage pregnancy.

### *Intrapersonal factors*

Individual or interpersonal factors are those attributes of an individual that increases his/her likelihood of engaging in risky behaviour by influencing how he/she interacts with the other contexts, and the influence that those contexts bring to bear on him/her (Bronfenbrenner, 1979).

### **Sexual behaviour**

The sexual behaviour of adolescents has the potential to confer significant risk to adolescents experiencing early pregnancy and contracting STIs and HIV.

### Sexual experience

When teenagers initiate their sexual life early on, they place themselves at increased risk for early pregnancy, STIs and HIV (Kirby, 2007). Early sexual debut remains an area of intractability in adolescent sexual behaviour in SA. Data from the 2003 RHRU survey shows that the median age at first sex among 15-24 year olds was 16 years for males and 17 years for females. The 2005 SABSMM survey reported that the median age of sexual debut for youth aged 15-24 years was 17 for both males and females. In fact, inter-age analysis from the 2005 SABSMM survey showed a trend towards earlier (rather than later) sexual debut among younger respondents than older respondents. Boys generally report earlier sexual debut than females and African youth are more likely to commence sexual activity earlier than other groups.

High levels of sexual experience are also reported among youth and this has not shifted over time. Both the 2003 RHRU and the 2006 Kaiser/SABC surveys revealed that 67 percent of young South Africans had ever had sexual intercourse. Slightly lower percentages of youth (57.9%) aged 15-24 years reported ever having sex in the 2005 SABSMM survey. Rates were higher among females (62.3%) than among males (53.9%) and particularly, among African (60.6%) and Coloured (52.3%) youth when compared to White (38.3%) and Indian (32.4%) youth. As is expected, the study also reported that sexual experience increased with age. While only 10.1 percent of 15 year olds reported being sexually active, by 19 years of age 60.6 percent were sexually active.

### Sexual partnerships

Multiple sexual partnerships increase the risk of STIs and HIV (Kirby, 2007) and this remains an area of intractability, particularly among young men. Contrary to popular perceptions about the sexual promiscuity of young people, 25 percent of males and 45 percent of females aged 15-24 years reported one lifetime sexual partner in the 2003 RHRU survey. While the mean number of lifetime sexual partnerships was higher among males (4.9) than females (2.3), the difference between males (1.8) and females (1.1) in the mean number of sexual partners in the past 12 months, was less pronounced. Females in this age group show a greater propensity to stick to one partner over the past 12 months (90.4%) and this trend has persisted since 2002. Males, however, report more frequent partner change and this confers significant risk for HIV. While nearly three quarters (72.8%) of sexually active males reported one partner during this period, just under a third (27.2%) had

more than one partner in the past 12 months. In fact, almost half of 15-19 year old males (45.2%) and almost a third (28.0%) of females in this age group reported more than one current sexual partnership.

### Sexual frequency

The more frequently young people have sex, the greater the likelihood that the female partner will become pregnant (Kirby, 2007). Jewkes et al., (2001) showed that when young women have sex once a week or more they are at significantly increased risk of falling pregnant. Low levels of frequent sexual activity are reported among youth in SA and a significant proportion practise secondary abstinence. Almost half of young people in the 2002 and 2005 SABSMM surveys reported have sex 1-4 times in the past month and almost a quarter did not have sex in the past month. The 2003 RHRU survey also reported low levels of frequent sex amongst youth with over 90 percent of males and females reporting sex less than five times in the past month.

### Age mixing

When young people have sex with partners older themselves they are at increased risk of engaging in sexual activity, not using contraception, contracting an STI and becoming pregnant (Kirby, 2007). The 2003 RHRU survey reported that for young men the average age of sexual partners was a year younger than they themselves were, but for females, their partners were on average four years older. While almost all males (98%) aged 15-19 in the 2005 SABSMM survey reported that their partner was within five years of their age, 18.1 percent of females in this age group, reported being with a partner five years older than themselves. This latter trend conferred significant risk for HIV. The study showed that when young women's partners were within a five-year age range, HIV prevalence was 17.2 percent. However, HIV prevalence almost doubled (29.5%) in instances that partners were five years older than themselves.

### Contraceptive use

Contraceptive use represents a significant area of progress among youth in SA and has been partly credited with the first signs of decline in HIV among youth and overall declines in teenage fertility. The 2003 RHRU survey reported that over half of sexually-active women (52.2%) aged 15-24 years were currently using contraception. Two thirds (66.6%) reported using hormonal methods only, under a third (26.5%) used condoms only and less than 10 percent (6.8%) used dual methods (condoms and hormones). Contraceptive use, particularly condom use, has increased significantly since the 1998 SADHS. The latter study reported that 28.5 percent of 15-19 year olds and 57.2 percent of 20-24 year olds used the pill (3.5%, 9.6% respectively), an IUD (0.1%, 0.4% respectively), injectables (22.9%, 42.5% respectively) or condoms (2.0%, 3.5% respectively) (DOH, MRC & Measure DHS, 2002).

Condom use has increased dramatically since the 1990s. The 1998 SADHS reported that only 7.6 percent of sexually-active females aged 20-24 years used a condom at last sex. This increased to 47 percent in the 2002 SABSMM survey and to 55.7 percent by the 2005 SABSMM survey. Similarly, the 2003 RHRU survey showed that 52 percent of youth who reported ever having had sex had used a condom at last sex. The proportion had increased to 62 percent in the 2006 Kaiser/SABC survey.

While reports of condom use has increased for both males and females, rates of use are still almost 20 percentage points lower among females



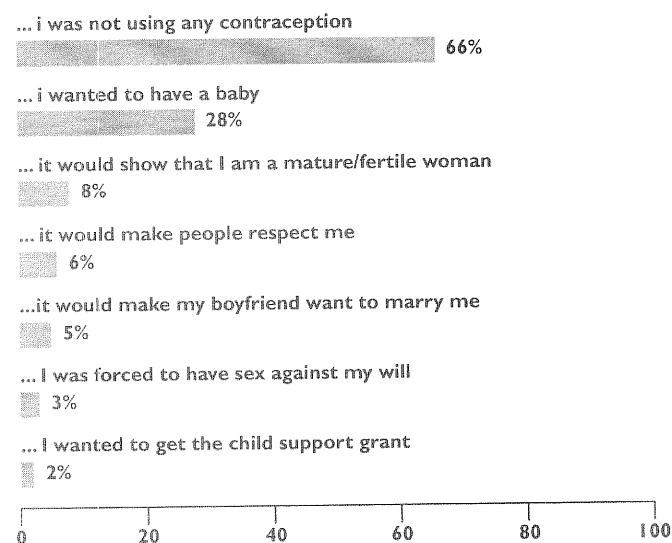
than among males. Rates among young men increased from 57.1 percent in 2002 SABSMM survey to 72.8 percent in 2005 SABSMM survey. Using the 2003 RHRU survey, Harrison (2008b) showed that condom use in fact peaks at a young age for women (16 years) but declines thereafter. Rates of condom use among men remain consistently high until about 21, where after it declines.

While condom use has increased over time, low condom use during sexual debut and inconsistent condom use significantly increases the risk for unplanned pregnancy and HIV. Under Less than half of young people (46%) reported using a condom during sexual debut in the 2003 RHRU survey and only a third report always having used a condom with their most recent partner.

Knowledge, beliefs and attitudes about contraception

Even though most pregnancies are unwanted in SA, over half of young people do little to prevent them. Two thirds (66%) of young women who reported ever being pregnant in the 2006 Kaiser/SABC study, identified failure to use contraception as the main reason for pregnancy (see Figure 10). This by far outweighed other potential reasons including wanting to have a baby (28%), pregnancy as a proxy for fertility (8%) and pregnancy as a way of gaining respect (6%).

**Figure 10: Reasons for teenage pregnancy among young women who have ever been pregnant**



Source: Kaiser/SABC Survey, 2006

Although poor knowledge is often cited as a reason for ineffective or non-use of contraceptives (Arai, 2003, Bankole, Ahmed, Neema, Ouedraogo & Konyani, 2007), studies have shown that most young people are well informed about modern methods of contraception. The 1998 SADHS reported almost universal knowledge of modern methods of contraception among unmarried sexually-active women (99.2%) and similar high percentages of knowledge about the pill (96.4%) and condoms (94.3%). Slightly lower levels of knowledge (85.5%) about modern methods of contraception were reported among sexually-inexperienced women in the study. Similarly, qualitative research among young mothers in Soweto reported that lack of education on sexuality and information on contraception could not

be used as a legitimate reason for pregnancy as these were widely available (Kaufman et al., 2001).

While adolescents have high levels of knowledge about contraceptive methods, gaps exist in the accuracy of their knowledge or skill regarding correct use of contraception (Conover & Chaudry, 2008; Abiodun & Balogun, 2008; Bankole et al., 2007). Incorrect usage can lead to tears in condoms and missed doses of birth control pills can lead to ovulation. Because of poor education by health staff, girls in Limpopo province reported only using contraceptive pills when partners visited them, using half the number of pills to reduce weight gain or stopping contraceptive use altogether due to side effects such as amenorrhoea (Wood & Jewkes, 2006). These errors can decrease the effectiveness of the contraceptive method and increase chances of becoming pregnant (Conover & Chaudry, 2008). But data from the 2003 RHRU survey has shown that when young people feel confident about their ability to use condoms, they are more likely to use them (Hendriksen et al., 2007). Sex education that reaches beyond awareness, aiming to improve accuracy and completeness of knowledge about contraception as well as condom use self-efficacy, can play a critical role in encouraging safe sexual behaviour.

Negative perceptions about contraceptives play a significant role in whether adolescents will use them. Such perceptions often arise from false beliefs about contraception such as: a condom could slip off during intercourse and be left inside a woman's vagina (Jackson & Harrison, 1999; Tillotson & Maharaj, 2001; Wood & Jewkes, 2006), condoms reduce sexual enjoyment (Maharaj, 2006; Morojele, Brook & Kachieng, 2006), condoms are of poor quality (Temin et al., 1999), and fear of the perceived physical effects (weight gain or nausea) (Varga, 2003; Wood & Jewkes, 2006) and fertility-related side effects of contraceptive use (Varga 2003; Wood & Jewkes, 2006).

Qualitative research conducted among young people in Khutsong about condom use in the context of an HIV epidemic has identified a complex interplay of factors that determine its use (MacPhail & Campbell, 2001). At the *individual level*, most young people did not use condoms because they did not perceive themselves to be at risk of HIV infection. At a *relational level*, young men in particular have internalised the frequently reported negative attitudes expressed by peers towards condom use. Condom use has also come to be negatively associated with trust, respect and fidelity within steady relationships, but is generally accepted within casual encounters. In fact, Hendriksen et al., (2007) showed that young people who were married or in a relationship lasting six months or longer were less likely to use condoms. Young people erroneously evaluate trustworthiness within relationships based on subjective criteria (appearance and reputation of the partner), rather than on objective criteria (a negative HIV test and discussion of sexual history). Worryingly, 31 percent of youth in the 2003 RHRU survey still believe that using a condom is a sign of not trusting one's partner.

Power imbalances also play a role in women's ability to negotiate safe sex. In a context of high levels of sexual coercion, women seldom have the power to negotiate sex or condom use in relationships (Wood & Jewkes, 1998). In the Khutsong study, male participants referred to tricking women into having sex, lying about using condoms and forcing women to have sex with groups of friends (MacPhail & Campbell, 2001). In discussions with young Zulu men and women in KwaZulu-

Natal, Varga (2003) reported that avoiding conception has come to be defined as part of female sexual respectability and attractiveness. There is general agreement that women hold responsibility for contraception in the relationship although there is little space for open discussion about contraceptive choices with male partners. Although many participants in the study supported contraceptive use, it is still a stigmatised practice bearing the negative social connotation of being promiscuous. Women also have little room to suggest condom use as it is considered inappropriate and indicative of sexual permissiveness (Varga, 2003).

At an *organisational level*, despite the increasing availability of condoms at public clinics, the negative and moralising attitude of health staff in the Khutsong Study, limited accessibility and few young people could afford to buy condoms. At the *structural level*, pervasive poverty also forced some young women in the Khutsong Study to engage in sexual relationships in exchange for lifts home from school, and gifts and money for subsistence. Similarly, Zulu girls from KwaZulu-Natal reported economic security as one of the reasons for having more than one partner, although multiple sex partners compromised their respectability (Varga, 2003). Under such conditions, women seldom possess the power to demand safe sex.

#### **Attitudes towards teenage pregnancy**

Extensive research has been conducted on teenagers' knowledge, beliefs and attitudes about sexuality, high-risk behaviours and about contraceptive use. However, not as much attention has been devoted to adolescents' attitudes about pregnancy and parenthood. International studies have shown that young girls are capable of assessing their odds of pregnancy fairly well, and that their parenting desires and expectations are predictive of their subsequent fertility outcomes (Bruckner, Martin & Bearman, 2004; East, Khoo & Reyes, 2006). Adolescents who express low intentions and desire for childbearing are less likely to experience teenage pregnancy (East et al., 2006).

However, even slightly ambivalent attitudes toward early pregnancy increase the risk for early childbearing, probably due to a lack of adequate understanding and appreciation of the negative consequences of early parenting (Bruckner et al., 2004). Ambivalent attitudes are common among teenagers from disadvantaged backgrounds and those who have low future aspirations. For them the benefits of childbearing - maturity, love, responsibility, and the perception that it will lead to a better relationship with the baby's father, outweigh any possible risks (Frost & Oslak, 1999). For such adolescents, the desire to avoid pregnancy is not strong enough to motivate action.

Much of the literature on teenage pregnancy has tended to concentrate on the factors that hinder contraceptive use, and have failed to effectively address the possibility that a significant proportion of female adolescents may view immediate pregnancy and parenthood in a positive light. International research has reported that some adolescents intentionally become pregnant (Unger, Molina & Teran, 2000; Cater & Coleman, 2006; Condon & Corkindale, 2001). Choosing to become pregnant is seen as a positive decision, offering a sense of purpose and future direction. Such a path is chosen to correct negative childhood experiences characterised by dysfunctional family relationships, poor scholastic experiences, and growing up in homes and neighbourhoods where teenage pregnancy was normative (Cater & Coleman, 2006).

Substantial literature existed in SA in the early 1990s that indicated that pregnancy was welcomed, particularly among young African women and their families, as a sign of 'love, womanhood and fertility' and potential bride wealth, and that men felt pride in bearing a child as a sign of their masculinity (Preston-Whyte & Zondi, 1992; Caldwell & Caldwell, 1993; Jewkes et al., 2001). However, a shifting socio-economic landscape has brought about changes in the aspirations of young people, particularly in urban areas. This, in turn, has altered cultural expectations of young women and men. Over two thirds of adolescents who have ever been pregnant in SA report their pregnancies as unwanted (Pettifor et al., 2004). In addition, only 8 percent of women who had been pregnant in the 2006 Kaiser/SABC Study reported proof of fertility as a reason for early childbearing. In fact, cultural constructions of femininity have altered to include education, stable employment, career goals and the avoidance of pregnancy (Varga, 2003). In line with increasing opportunities and aspirations for education, and pervasive unemployment, most African adolescents do not welcome early pregnancy (Kaufman et al., 2001; MacPhail & Campbell, 2001; Rutenberg et al., 2003; Varga, 2003).

A 1996 study of African adolescents reported that the overwhelming majority of girls did not want to have a child until they had completed school and obtained the financial means to care for a child (Richter, 1996). In 1998, young African mothers in Soweto spoke of the difficulty of coming to terms with an early pregnancy, coping with betrayal of parents, partners and friends and the trauma associated with weighing options regarding the continuation of the pregnancy, whom to tell and whether to continue education (Kaufman et al., 2001). In 1999, the Transitions to Adulthood Study in KwaZulu-Natal reported that African young women were more likely than White and Indian women to regard teenage pregnancy as a big problem because of its impact on educational and employment opportunities (Rutenberg et al., 2003). In the context of an HIV epidemic, there are also indications that the perceived risk of HIV may mediate negative attitudes about pregnancy (Rutenberg et al., 2003).

While extensive research has been conducted in SA on knowledge and beliefs about HIV transmission and contraceptive use, most research on knowledge and beliefs about teenage pregnancy has been derived from qualitative research conducted in the 1990s as well as inferred from studies on contraceptive use and HIV. Whether young people understand the biology and detail of how pregnancy happens is unclear. A 1997 study conducted among rural adolescents in Limpopo Province reported a number of myths about teenage pregnancy (Wood & Jewkes, 2006). These include that 'the blood of each sexual partner had to get used to that of the other through a number of sexual encounters before conception could occur' and that 'multiple sexual partners would prevent conception because the blood was different each time'.

A number of practices involving traditional medicine were also reported to prevent conception and avoiding sex during menstruation, which they believed was the most likely time for conception to occur. Although more recent qualitative research has indicated that young people receive sufficient sex education to know how pregnancy occurs (Kaufman et al., 2001), quantitative data is not available on knowledge and beliefs about pregnancy. In addition, Wood & Jewkes (2006) indicate that more recent research conducted elsewhere in SA showed that myths about conception still hold, particularly, that most conception occurs during menstruation.

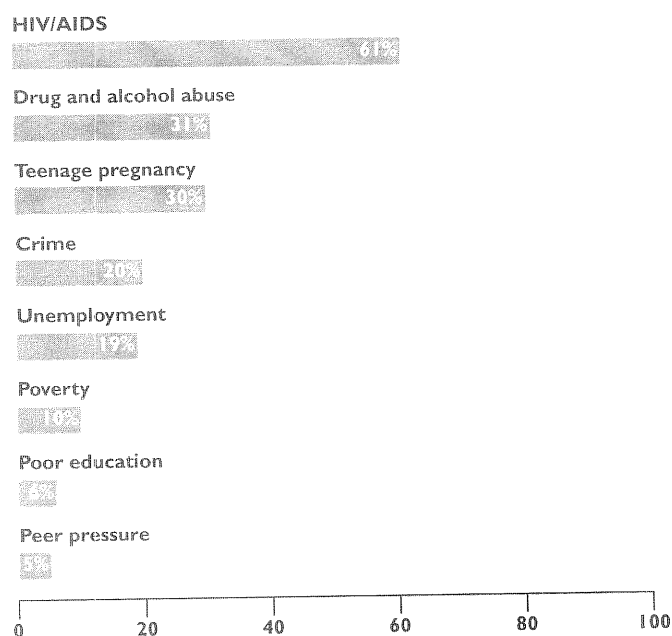
Young people in SA report learn the most about pregnancy prevention from health workers (22%), schools (17%), parents (15%) and from friends (9%) (Pettifor et al., 2004). For good reason, sex education within these environments has focused on the risk for HIV. However, equal focus needs to be given to pregnancy prevention.

### Risk perception

When young people perceive themselves to be at risk for pregnancy or HIV, they are more likely to adopt protective behaviours (Kirby, 2007). Although adolescents may have the competency to accurately identify the presence of risk, they do not always have the required capability to sufficiently evaluate the consequences or costs of the risk prior to taking action (Greene, Krmar, Walters, Rubin & Hale, 2000). In addition, adolescents' immature cognitive functioning may limit their ability to apply knowledge to their own behaviour, appraise their risk and to apply skills for safer sexual behaviours (Pedlow & Carey, 2004). Thus they fail to appreciate the chance of the harm happening.

Despite the normalisation of early childbearing in SA, many adolescents still identify teenage pregnancy as a significant issue facing young people (see Figure 11) (Kaiser Family Foundation & SABC, 2006).

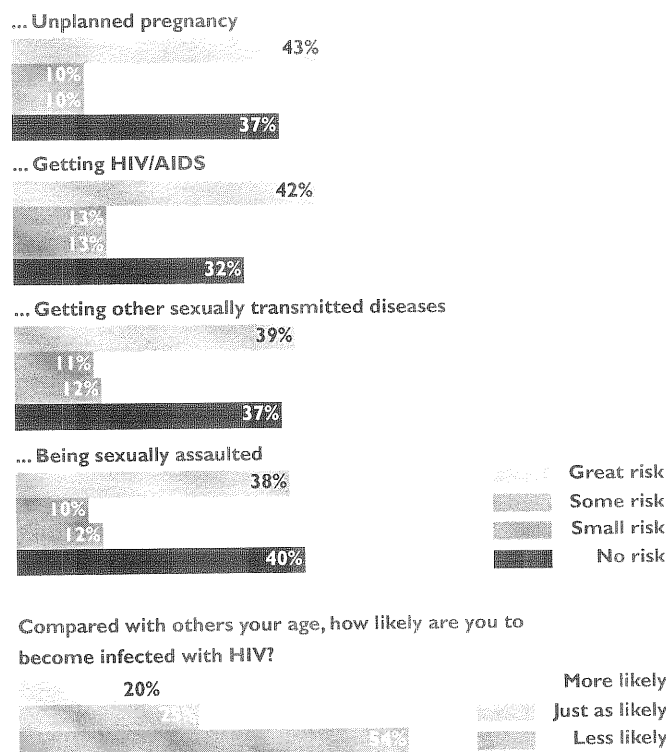
Figure 11: Perception of the most important issues facing youth in South Africa, 2003



Source: Kaiser/SABC Survey, 2006

In addition, a significant proportion of young people (43%) perceive themselves to be at great risk for unplanned pregnancy (see Figure 12). Despite the increased emphasis on HIV and AIDS in SA, equal proportions of young people perceive themselves to be at risk for pregnancy and HIV. The assessment of risk of pregnancy corresponds well with the large percentage of youth in SA who report unprotected sex. It is noteworthy, however, that over a third of young people (37%) do not perceive themselves to be at risk for unplanned pregnancy.

Figure 12: Perception of risk for unplanned pregnancy, STIs, HIV and sexual assault, 2003



### Substance use

Adolescents who participate in one form of risk behaviour often also partake in other risk behaviours (Essau, 2004). Many studies have shown for example the co-occurrence of substance use and sexual activity (Shrier, Emans, Woods & DuRant, 1996; Flisher et al., 2000). Alcohol and drug use increases an adolescent's chances of unprotected sexual intercourse and, in turn, pregnancy (Kirby, 2002; Limmer, 2008). While the association between alcohol and sexual risk behaviour has long been established (Limmer, 2008), few studies have investigated the direct links between alcohol and pregnancy (Alcohol Concern, 2002). Studies in the US report that between a third and half of adolescent pregnancies are the result of alcohol use (Kaiser Family Foundation; 1996; The National Center on Addiction and Substance Abuse, 2002).

South Africa has the dual burden of high-risk sexual behaviour and substance use. At a national level about a third (31.8%) of adolescents report drinking in the past month and a quarter report binge drinking (Reddy et al., 2003). Several studies have reported that between 6-12 percent of adolescents have used drugs in their lifetime (Brook, Morojele, Zhang & Brook, 2006; Madu & Matla 2003; Rocha Silva, De Miranda & Erasmus, 1996). A significant proportion of sexually-active learners in SA (13.3%) also report using alcohol or drugs before sex (Reddy et al., 2003). In fact, data from Cape Town has shown that when learners use drugs (methamphetamine) they are more likely to have anal, vaginal and oral sex as well as to be pregnant or responsible for a pregnancy (Pluddemann et al., 2008). Although the association between lifetime sexual behaviour and alcohol or marijuana use is strong, the biggest risk that substance use confers to adolescent sexual behaviour is that adolescents are more likely to engage in causal sex (Palen et al., 2006). In fact, studies have shown that when young women initiate sex

with a steady boyfriend and someone they know for a while, they are less likely to experience an early pregnancy (Jewkes et al., 2001).

Within the rubric of a dual burden of HIV and substance use in the country, several studies have focused on the ways in which alcohol and drug use serve as precursors for risky sex (Kalichman et al., 2007; Kalichman, 2008; Morojele et al., 2006; Morejele, Brook, & Kachieng, 2006; Palen et al., 2006). The psychoactive effects of alcohol and drug use are thought to increase sexual arousal and desire, decrease inhibition and tenseness, diminish decision-making capacity, judgement and sense of responsibility, and generally disempower women to resist sex (Morejele et al., 2006). Studies have reported on the increased risk of forced sex and the decreased likelihood of using condoms when under the influence of alcohol (Morojele et al., 2006). These effects are facilitated in a context of high unemployment, and in an environment where peer norms promote heavy drinking, alcohol and drugs are easily accessible, and casual sex is readily available.

#### **Childhood sexual and physical abuse**

Although evidence of the relationship between childhood sexual abuse and adolescent pregnancy has been mixed, a recent review reported nine studies that supported such a relationship (Francisco et al., 2008). In addition, a number of studies found a strong link between child sexual abuse and risky sexual behaviour (Francisco et al., 2008). Studies have shown that a disproportionately large number of adolescent mothers report a history of past sexual and physical abuse (Francisco et al., 2008; Hillis et al., 2004; Kirby, 2002; Van Der Hulst et al., 2006; Lansford et al., 2007; Pallitto & Murillo, 2008).

Data is not available in SA on the link between child sexual abuse and early pregnancy. However, it is well known that SA is a violent society. Although state-institutionalised violence under *Apartheid*, has been replaced by a rights-based framework, violence has come to be entrenched in our interpersonal interactions, at home, in schools and communities. Child abuse – whether physical, sexual or psychological, is rife in SA. It is difficult to quantify the extent of abuse because of variability in how it is defined, its hidden nature, and differences in community understanding and willingness to report abuse (Richter & Dawes, 2008). South African Police Service data on reported crimes provide a potential gauge. However, these are likely to be grossly underreported. For the year 2004-2005, children were victims of almost half of all indecent assaults (48.2%), close to half of all rapes (42.7%) and one in 10 common assaults (11.4%) (Richter & Dawes, 2008). Children are also the victims of physical abuse by their family members. In 2005, Dawes and colleagues measured parents' social attitudes to physical punishment in SA. Over half of the sample (57%) had smacked their child in the past year and of these, 3 out of 5 (60%) had used a belt or another object to beat their child. Most children who had been smacked were 3 years of age and those who were beaten with an object were 4 years old.

A number of reasons have been provided to explain the link between prior abuse and increased risk of teenage pregnancy. Adolescents with a history of child sexual abuse have experienced a violation of their most intimate boundaries. This can lead to a sense of powerlessness in relationships and may influence their ability to negotiate contraceptive use (De Bellis, 2001). Traumatized adolescents turn to substance use, prostitution and running away from home, increasing their risk of early pregnancy (Pike & Wittstruck, 2000; Saewyc, Magee, & Pettingell, 2004;

Silverman, Raj, Mucci et al., 2001). They often partner with adult men as these relationships are viewed as more advantageous in terms of the resources these men are able to provide (Darroch, Landry & Oslak, 1999; Elstein & Davis, 1997). While such a partnering may initially offer the means necessary to escape a violent family of origin, the imbalance of power and control limits their ability to negotiate contraceptive use (Harner, 2005). Adolescents who report a history of sexual abuse are less likely to use contraceptives than those who are not abused (Kirby, 2002; Koenig et al., 2004; Saewyc et al., 2004).

#### **Interpersonal factors**

The day-to-day social environment in which young people participate and develop can have a profound effect on behaviour. Families, together with partners, peers and schools play a significant role in identity formation and decision making (NRC & IOM, 2005).

#### **Families**

Many aspects of family life exert substantial influence on adolescents' sexual behaviours and pregnancy risk (Miller, Benson, Galbraith, 2001; Miller, 2002). These include socio-economic status (to be discussed later on), family type, parental values and role-modelling, parental style, monitoring and support and parent-child communication.

#### **Family type**

Family structural characteristics play a vital role in understanding and determining teenage sexual behaviour including pregnancy. Many studies have shown that family structure is strongly correlated with teenage pregnancy (Langille, Flowerdew & Andreou, 2004; Miller, Bayley, Christensen Leavitt & Coyl, 2003). Growing up in a single-parent home (Bonell et al., 2006; Kirby, 2002; Miller et al., 2001) or without any parents places adolescents at elevated risk of early pregnancy (Miranda & Szwarcwald, 2007; Zeck, Bjelic-Radusic, Haas & Greimel, 2007). Even when family factors associated with father absence are controlled for, the association between mothers' single parenting and daughters' early pregnancy persists (Ellis, Bates, Dodge et al., 2003). Teenagers who are raised in larger families are also at increased risk of earlier sex than those who are not. This results from teenager's replicating their siblings' sexual behaviour or because parental monitoring is spread too thin when more children live in the home (East & Jacobson, 2001; East & Shi, 1997).

The link between family structure and youth sexual behaviour has been attributed to single or divorced parents more permissive sexual attitudes and values (Dittus & Jaccard 2000; Jaccard, Dittus & Gordon, 2000), inadequate parental supervision and monitoring and the parents' own dating activity (Whitbeck, Simons & Koa, 1994). Furthermore, household characteristics such as family income and maternal employment may be associated with both poor parenting and family structure (Antecol & Bedard, 2007), which, in turn, affects adolescent sexual behaviour. Quantitative data among adolescents from KwaZulu-Natal showed that poverty leads to distant parent-child relationships affecting behavioural and personality attributes of adolescents (Brook et al., 2006). This, in turn, increases the likelihood of association with deviant peers and ultimately, risky sexual behaviour.

Household structure is a subject of much debate in SA because of the effects of a migrant labour system that separated production and reproduction, early fertility, delayed marriage, HIV and AIDS deaths and economic and cultural factors that promote and support multi-

generational living. Studies have shown that SA does not follow a single pattern of living arrangements. While White families generally follow the Western model of nuclear families, African and Coloured families and increasingly, Indian families, support extended family living arrangements because of the factors mentioned above (Amoateng, Heaton & Kalule-Sabiti, 2007). Father absence from the home has come to characterise South African living arrangements, largely because of the persistence of unemployment forcing men and increasingly women, to migrate to urban centres in search of work. According to the 2001 population census a fifth of African men (19.2%) lived apart from their wives compared to only 4 percent among White families (Amoateng, Heaton & Kalule-Sabiti, 2007). The demographic surveillance site in Agincourt, Mpumalanga has reported an increase in female-headed households between 1992 (27.6%) and 2003 (35.9%) as well as the number of households with orphaned and fostered children. National data confirms the concentration of poverty in female-headed households (60.6% for women vs. 38.3% for men at R322 a month poverty line), despite improvements since 1995 (Bhorat & van der Westhuizen, 2008). In addition, female-headed households account for a disproportionate share of the poor compared to their share of the population. Half of individuals considered poor in 2005 lived in female-headed households.

#### Parental values and role-modelling

The family has a very early and extensive impact on an adolescent's belief systems and values, and hence on their behaviour (Gordon, 1996). Consistent parental values have been recognised as a vital factor that influences later sexual debut and decreases the risk of unintended pregnancies (Berglas et al., 2003). Adolescents whose parents are clear about the value of delaying sex are less likely to have intercourse at an early age (Blum & Rinehard, 1998). Parents' values against adolescent sexual intercourse (or unprotected intercourse) decrease the risk of adolescent pregnancy (Miller et al., 2001). However, parents with permissive attitudes about sex or premarital sex, or those that have negative attitudes about contraception have teenagers who are more likely to have unsafe sex and become pregnant (Dittus & Jaccard 2000; Jaccard et al., 2000; Kirby, 2002).

Family members also serve as role models to their children. Adolescents are more likely to initiate sex and experience pregnancy if their parents or other family members have sex outside of marriage, are cohabitating with a romantic or sexual partner or have had a child outside of marriage (Kirby 2001). In addition, several studies have demonstrated that having a mother or sister who was a teenage parent is strongly linked with a teenager herself falling pregnant (East & Jacobson, 2001; East et al., 2006; Vikat et al., 2002).

#### Parental style, monitoring and support

The nature and quality of the relationship shared between an adolescent and their parent can have a major influence on the decisions that they make about sex. Teenagers whose parents provided a warm, loving, and nurturing environment are less likely to engage in sex (Cox, 2007). A review of more than 20 studies demonstrated that the presence of parent-child connectedness (support, closeness, and parental warmth) decrease the risk of adolescent pregnancy by influencing adolescent sexual and contraceptive behaviours (Miller et al., 2001). However, overly strict and authoritarian parenting style is associated with a greater risk of teen pregnancy (Miller, 1998).

A failure to share a close connection with adolescents often heightens the influence of peers on sexual activity. This could account for the

association between poor or distant parent-child relationships and risky adolescent sexual behaviour (Feldman & Brown, 1993). Adolescents who describe their relationships with their parents as coercive or conflictual, for example, are more likely to be involved with deviant peer groups, and the peers become most important and influential. Conversely, adolescents whose parents have more authoritative parenting styles are more likely to belong to a peer group that supports both adolescent and parent norms (Perrino et al., 2000).

Parental practices impact both the emotional and social development of adolescents. Parents who set and enforce rules, monitor behaviour and provide support can have a positive impact on sexual behaviour. Studies have shown that parental regulation through house rules, supervision and monitoring can delay sexual debut, reduce the number of partners (Cohen, Farley, Taylor, Martin & Schuster, 2002; Huebner & Howell, 2003), increase contraceptive use (Miller et al., 1999; Rodgers, 1999) and decrease pregnancy risk (Miller et al., 2001).

#### Parental communication

Among the various dimensions of family social support, parent-adolescent communication on issues of sexual behaviour and childbearing has received considerable attention (Camlin & Snow, 2008; Wilson & Donenber, 2004). Positive, open and frequent family communication about sex is linked to postponement of sexual activity, increased contraceptive use and fewer sexual partners (Blake, Simkin, Ledsky, Perkins & Calabrese, 2001; Dittus & Jaccard 2000; Hutchinson, Jemmott, Jemmott, Braverman & Fong, 2002; Karofsky, Zeng & Kosorok, 2000). Similarly, parent-child communication is vital for the prevention and reduction of teenage pregnancy (Hollander, 2003). Many adolescents concur that it would be easier for them to avoid teen pregnancy if they were able to have more open and honest conversations about these topics with their parents (Albert, 2004). Parent-child communication about sex increases the likelihood that sexual risk will be discussed with partners and can mediate negative peer norms about sexual behaviour (Whitaker & Miller, 2000).

Despite the importance of parent-adolescent communication about sexual behaviour, the timing, frequency, content, developmental appropriateness and quality may mediate the outcomes of communication (Dittus & Jaccard 2000; Whitaker et al., 1999; Blake, Simkin, Ledsky et al., 2001; Miller, Benson, & Galbraith, 2001). Communication between parents and adolescents about sexual risk behaviour represents a missed opportunity in SA. Even though 79 percent of adolescents regard parents as a trusted source of information about HIV (Kaiser Family Foundation & SABC, 2006), even more so than friends, only 4 percent of adolescents report learning the most about HIV from their parents (Pettifor et al., 2004). In addition, 15 percent reported learning the most about contraception and pregnancy prevention from their parents. Adolescents in SA report poor communication with parents about sexual matters because parents refuse to engage in conversations with them about sex, provide only vague indications rather than direct and correct information, and may even punish them for bringing up the topic (Eaton et al., 2003; Kelly, 2000; Kelly & Parker, 2000; Lesch & Kruger, 2005).

Focus group discussions conducted among Coloured adolescents in the Western Cape reported that there was little space for open communication about sexuality with their mothers (Lesch & Kruger, 2005). Mothers used a discourse of danger about sex linked to religious

violations, to dissuade their daughters from sexual activity. To protect a close relationship with their mothers, a culture of silence was maintained about sexuality even though there were clear signs that daughters were sexually active. Richter et al. (2006), commenting on third-generation pregnancies in the BT20 cohort in Soweto, also noted the culture of silence around teenage fertility even though it is wholly apparent that girls are sexually active and pregnant. Young women in the Western Cape also do not seek contraception because of the fear that their mothers will discover that they are sexually active (Lesch & Kruger, 2005).

Ethnographic research that preceded a family-based intervention to improve communication between parents and children about HIV and sexuality in rural KwaZulu-Natal, entitled CHAMPSA, showed that parents lack both knowledge and skill to talk openly about sex and felt disempowered to parent their children in an environment that emphasises a rights-based culture for children (Paruk et al., 2005). In addition, the generational knowledge gap, fuelled by the educational gap between parents and children, also contributed to parents' sense of disempowerment. The loss of traditional customs where girls and boys were schooled about sexuality by appointed members in the community as well as the sense of social cohesion where parents shared collective responsibility for raising children in a community, have left parents confused as to how to respond to the HIV epidemic and pregnancy. To compensate for the disempowerment, parents resort to misinformation and myths as well as a punitive parenting styles involving physical violence to discourage girls from sexual activity (Paruk et al., 2005). Following the intervention, both quantitative (Bell et al., 2008) and qualitative research (Paruk, Peterson & Bell, 2009) reported an improvement in parents' knowledge about HIV, increased comfort in talking about sensitive issues with their children including the discourse of rights and responsibilities, and greater monitoring and control of children's whereabouts.

### Partners

Gender power inequities play a significant role in women's vulnerability to early and unprotected sex as well as pregnancy in SA. Sexual and physical violence have come to characterise relationships between men and women in some communities in SA. The 2003 RHRU survey reported that 2 percent of 15-24 year old males and 10 percent of females had been physically forced to have sex. In a case control study among pregnant teenagers in Cape Town, Jewkes et al. (2001) demonstrated that only a quarter (25.7%) of pregnant teens reported having sex willingly the first time; two out of four were persuaded (42.4%) and a third were raped (31.9%). In fact 72 percent of pregnant teens in the study reported coercive sex and a tenth (11.1%) reported rape. Forced sex or coercion is often accompanied by physical assault. In this study three out of five pregnant teens (59.8%) reported being beaten by their boyfriends and almost four out of five (77.9%) were afraid that they would be beaten if they refused sex. Both sexual coercion and greater frequency of beatings were significant risk factors for pregnancy in the study.

There is rich qualitative data in SA describing the context of first sexual experiences of young women (Wood et al., 1998; Woods & Jewkes, 1997; MacPhail & Campbell, 2001; Varga, 2003; Morojele, Brook & Kachieng, 2006). Women are often forced or tricked into having sex for the first time, usually involving physical violence to ensure acquiescence, and this pattern characterises their sexual relationships well into the future. The practice is so widespread in some communities that peers reinforce it as a normative and accepted practice; women come to

believe that they are beaten as a show of love; and men take advantage of the initial sexual naivety of women by equating penetrative sex as proof of love. Several studies have in fact reported that women do not recognise forced sex as rape when it involves a boyfriend.

Violence is used to ensure the sexual availability of women, to punish alleged infidelity when women refuse sex (although men view it as their right to have multiple partners), and to prevent women from ending relationships. The threat of violence or of rejection is a significant deterrent to discussing contraceptive use. Despite the extent of violence experienced and their general cognisance of the power imbalances and contradictions in their relationships, few in fact consider leaving (Jewkes et al., 2001). It is hypothesised that in a context of pervasive poverty and unemployment, being in a relationship is one area in which women can achieve success and self esteem can be gained. In addition, although not recognised as transactional sex, relationships often afford women material gains that would otherwise not be accessible to them. In such a context where sexual and physical violence has become a social construct of relationships, individually-focused interventions that merely promote 'choice' among women are unlikely to achieve much success (Wood, Maforah & Jewkes, 1998; Woods & Jewkes, 1997). Sexuality has to be renegotiated within the context of a relationship and this requires a concerted effort to involve men in behaviour change interventions.

### Peers

As children make the transition from childhood to adolescence and engage in the process of identity formation, their reliance on parents and siblings as the sole sources of influence and decision making begins to change. Increasing interaction with other role models - best friends, peers, teachers and community members, begin to expand their sphere of influence. Peer attitudes, norms and behaviour as well as perceptions of norms and behaviour among peers have a significant and consistent impact on adolescent sexual behaviour. Studies have shown that when teenagers believe that their friends are having sex, they are more likely to have sex and when a positive perception about condom use is perceived among peers, adolescents are more likely to use condoms and contraceptives (Kirby, 2002; Sieving et al., 2006).

While there is some evidence of the influence of peers on teenage pregnancy in SA, much of the literature on peer influence revolves around contraceptive use and sexual behaviour. In a study on the risk factors related to teenage pregnancy in Cape Town, Jewkes et al. (2001) reported that sex often happened because most adolescents perceived that people of their age were sexually active (Jewkes et al., 2001). Similar findings were reported among adolescent girls in KwaZulu-Natal. While peers encourage sexuality among friends, pregnancy itself is highly stigmatised as it is regarded as a poor showing of female decorum (Kaufman et al., 2001). The study also reported that while constructions of femininity require women to be chaste and adhere to sexual fidelity, girls often feel pressure from friends to maintain multiple sexual partnerships as a means to gain peer group respect (Kaufman et al., 2001). Similarly, Wood, Maepa & Jewkes, (1997) reported that girls who were sexually inexperienced were excluded from friendship circles when issues of sexuality were discussed because they were regarded as 'children'.

Because sexual activity has come to define what it means to be successful as a man, young men in particular, received significant social pressure and support from peers to be sexually active and maintain

multiple sexual partnerships (MacPhail & Campbell, 2001; Varga, 2003). In the same vein, negative peer norms around condom use have been internalised by young men dissuading them from using condoms (MacPhail & Campbell, 2001; Morojele et al, 2006).

While much of the SA literature on peer norms are derived from qualitative research, a quantitative study in KwaZulu-Natal has shown that deviancy among peers – measured by delinquency, smoking, drinking, marijuana use and sexual intercourse, has a direct and independent relationship with risky sexual behaviour (number of sex partners, frequency of condom use and sex while using drugs or alcohol). The 2003 RHRU survey also provides some indication of the degree of peer influence on sexual behaviour. While 68 percent of youth reported that they received no pressure from friends to have sex, 10 percent reported that they received a lot of pressure to have sex. Females (74%) were more likely than males (61%) to report no pressure at all to have sex. In addition, 29 percent of teens aged 15-19 years thought that all of their friends were sexually active and an equal percentage reported that half or more of their friends were having sex. Even though friends (40%) are the least trusted source of information about HIV (Kaiser Family Foundation & SABC, 2006), 72 percent of young people have talked to their friends about HIV, far exceeding conversations with any other group (such as teachers, partners, siblings and health workers) (Pettifor et al., 2004). Shifting peer norms through strategies such as peer education is critical to alter risk of pregnancy and HIV.

### **Communities**

The socio-economic status of communities, the sense of social cohesion in the community that allows for informal social control as well as the role modelling offered by adult members of a community can have a bearing on the sexual behaviour of adolescents. Social disorganisation, high levels of disadvantage and poor achievement of members within a community serve to increase the likelihood of young people engaging in sex earlier and having early pregnancies (Kirby, 2002). Low levels of education, income and employment as well as high rates of crime amongst community members are risk factors for early pregnancy. Conversely, when community members are high achievers in terms of education, income and employment and they place a greater emphasis on higher education, pursuing career goals and avoiding teenage pregnancy, teenage pregnancy rates are likely to be low (Kirby, 2002). Despite high rates of unemployment and poverty that concentrate in certain sectors of the South African society, few studies have examined community level impact on sexual risk behaviour. Using the Cape Area Panel Study data for 2002 and 2005, Dinkelman, Lam and Leibbrandt (2008) showed that community level poverty significantly predicts early sexual debut for both males and females and higher rates of unprotected sex for males. When young people can't complete school and struggle to find work and see few opportunities for economic security, they are likely to discount the costs of pregnancy, HIV and display a willingness to take greater risks (Kaufman et al., 2004).

Data from the KZN Transitions Study showed mixed effects of community levels of education, income and participation in organised activity for boys and girls (Kaufman, Clark, Manzini & May, 2004). Higher levels of opportunity for education, income and participation in sport among girls, decreased their likelihood of having sex in the past year. However, for boys, each of these community attributes decreased the likelihood of condom use. These findings may be indicative of the underlying gender dynamics in communities within a context of relative

poverty, where access to privilege for men confers entitlement not to use condoms and to engage in other high-risk behaviours.

High levels of social cohesion within communities can offer protection against adolescent risk behaviour through the collective action of community members to implement informal social control (Sampson, Raudenbush & Earls, 1997). But in an environment of rapid social and cultural change social connectedness can be disrupted because of the lack of common values and goals (Paruk et al., 2005). Ethnographic research to support the implementation of a family and community level response to HIV in rural KwaZulu-Natal reported that an erosion of community members' trust in one another – particularly in relation to child sexual molestation in the community, and the tensions between political and traditional community leadership has dampened the willingness of community members to act in the interest of all of its children (Paruk et al., 2005). However, through a family-based intervention delivered at a community level, the social capital of the community was being restored through increased social support and reciprocity among community members, informal social control in regulating school attendance, and confronting drug use and unlicensed alcohol sales in the community, as well as social leverage in encouraging men to be more involved in child rearing and protection (Paruk, Petersen & Bhana, 2009). The quantitative analysis showed that the intervention was able to strengthen social networks, an essential ingredient for developing social capital (Bell et al., 2008).

### *Institutional factors*

Staff at public health clinics, as the gatekeepers to health care services, can have a significant impact on young people's sexual behaviour (Eaton et al., 2003). When quality health care services are provided by skilled professionals without judgement and respect for the confidentiality of adolescents, they are more likely to make use of these services (WHO, 2002). In addition, services that are convenient in terms of open times, do not involve having to stand in long queues and are free or at least affordable, are more likely to attract young people (WHO, 2002). Yet studies conducted across the world have shown that when young people require health services, the public sector is often the last resort. The conditional nature of health services – either through physical distance, poor quality of clinical services, lack of privacy and respect, high costs and a culture of shame that surrounds certain conditions that are reinforced by health care workers, makes health care inaccessible, unacceptable and inappropriate (WHO, 2002).

Even though family planning services including access to condoms and other forms of contraception are available without charge from public health facilities in SA, and most young people do in fact access condoms from health facilities (Shisana et al., 2005), the attitude of health staff serve as a significant barrier, especially for young women. Young women trying to access free condoms from clinics choose never to return because of the judgement and scolding of clinic staff (MacPhail & Campbell, 2001; Wood & Jewkes, 2006). Contraceptive use is associated with a culture of fear, shame and poor morality rather than responsible and healthy sexuality. Adolescents in Limpopo Province reported harassment by health staff not only for their sexuality but for arriving after school for services (as opposed to the morning), for tampering with clinic cards, and for not arriving on the stipulated return date (Wood & Jewkes, 2006). Although this study was conducted in 1997, more recent studies conducted elsewhere indicate that the negative attitude of health staff persists (Matthews et al., 2009).

Even though parental permission is not required for adolescents to use contraception, nursing staff also violate the privacy and confidentiality of young girls by threatening to report condom use to parents (MacPhail & Campbell, 2001). Focus group discussions among Coloured adolescents in the Western Cape also reported that they did not use contraception because of the lack of confidentiality at local clinics (Lesch & Kruger, 2005).

In some cases, nursing staff, together with mothers, force young girls to use injectables, sometimes at the inception of menstruation to avoid early pregnancy (Wood & Jewkes, 2006). Nursing staff also do not educate young girls sufficiently on how to take contraceptive pills and on the consequences of missed doses as well as the potential side effects of injectables, such as amenorrhoea and weight gain (Wood & Jewkes, 2006). As a result, girls used contraceptives incorrectly (e.g., by taking pills only when partners visited or on some days) and sometimes stop contraceptive use altogether.

As discussed earlier, conscientious objection by health workers and stigmatising attitudes also limit the availability of emergency contraception (Woods & Jewkes, 2006) and abortion services to young women (Jewkes et al., 2005).

Failure to promote healthy sexuality among young people and to educate them about contraceptive use represents a missed opportunity for prevention of teenage pregnancy and HIV. Doctors/scientists (87%) are the most trusted source of information on HIV among young people in SA (Kaiser Family Foundation & SABC, 2006). Yet only 12 percent of young people learned the most about HIV from health workers/nurses/doctors and clinics (Pettifor et al., 2004). Health workers also play the most important role (22%) in educating young people about contraception and pregnancy prevention. The shift towards the provision of adolescent-friendly services in SA is therefore a welcomed initiative, though its effectiveness in improving adolescent health outcomes, both locally and internationally, is yet to be established (Mathews et al., 2009; Tylee, Haller, Graham, Churchill & Sancu, 2007). In the absence of a supportive health care system for young people, service provision outside of the health sector may need to be considered.

#### *Structural factors*

Much emphasis has been placed on how individual behaviour and social interaction with important others confer risk for pregnancy, STIs and HIV. However, increasingly, the context in which young people grow up is being identified as the differentiating factor for which young people are protected against negative life outcomes and which are at heightened risk.

#### **Cultural context**

The possible impact of culture on attitudes towards teenage pregnancy needs to be considered. In certain cultures, teenage pregnancy is accepted and welcomed (Kirby, 2002; Melby, 2006) and this could impact teenagers' attitudes towards pregnancy and, in turn, their behaviour. Most research on pregnancy in SA has been conducted on older women and, in particular, among African women. There is a dearth of literature on teenage pregnancy among Indian and White South Africans (Jewkes & Christofides, 2008). Understanding the protective factors in these groups could offer important lessons for preventing early childbearing among African and Coloured adolescents. Anecdotal

evidence suggests that pre-marital pregnancy is not accepted in these groups (Jewkes & Christofides, 2008). Due to the high levels of stigma as well as the higher incentive to continue education and achieve financial aspirations as well as better access to reproductive health services, afforded by their generally higher socio-economic status, most White and Indian adolescents avoid pregnancy. When it does occur, pregnancy is either terminated or couples get married and share financial and social responsibility for the child. However, in the main, teenage pregnancies are avoided through the use of contraception or termination services (Jewkes & Christofides, 2008).

The high rates of teenage fertility among the African and Coloured population groups have made it a normative phenomenon. While pregnancies continue to be highly stigmatised, families have adjusted their response to accommodate early childbearing to mitigate the educational and economic consequences for the teenage mother and her child. There is generally no expectation of marriage in these groups because of early pregnancy.

Research conducted among African adolescents has pointed towards substantial power imbalances in sexual relationships between men and women. Very little is known about the status that women assume in sexual relationships in other cultures in SA (Eaton et al., 2003). Because of the close association between race, poverty and socio-economic status and their independent associations with sexual coercion and violence, cultural constructions of femininity and masculinity can only in part account for the African women's negative experiences in sexual relationships (Eaton et al., 2003). Nevertheless even when the above factors are controlled for, race differences remain, probably a reflection of cultural differences related to sexuality (Kirby, 2007).

A substantial discourse on the influence of African culture, particularly constructions of femininity and masculinity as a display of love, womanhood and fertility, and virility respectively, dominated reasons for teenage pregnancy in SA in the early 1990s (Jewkes et al., 2001, Preston-Whyte et al., 1990). While some research indicates that parts of these constructions may still be valid in certain sectors of society, particularly in rural areas (Wood & Jewkes, 2006; Varga, 2003), more recent research indicates that the social and economic transition in the country may have influenced these views. Varga (2003), in discussions with Zulu-speaking male and female adolescents in both urban and rural KwaZulu-Natal, has demonstrated how avoiding pregnancy together with educational, economic and career aspirations have come to define what would be regarded as 'respectable' for young men and women. Although fertility and motherhood continue to be important factors in the life course of women, pregnancy during adolescence was viewed as a major setback in terms of educational and economic aspirations. Even rural girls in this study reported a tension between traditional roles tied to fertility and social respectability associated with education and economic success. While sexual activity is the norm and encouraged among friends, having an early pregnancy is regarded as poor female decorum and subject to severe stigma by family and friends. Young women are labelled as 'bad', 'ruined', and a 'failure'.

While avoiding pregnancy has now come to define what it means to be respectable as a young woman, a number of other practices continue to hobble opportunities to avoid pregnancy. These include traditional notions of sexual fidelity and sexual availability to partners, normalised coercive sex, men holding sexual decision-making power and little room



to negotiate contraceptive use with partners. However, respectability among men is still strongly tied to their *right* to make decisions about when, where and how sex happens, to be highly sexually active and to have multiple partners. This highly-sexualised notion of respectability is often linked to a biological need for sex. A number of studies have commented on the natural desire among men for sex – a social construction believed by both men and women, as a means to justify multiple sexual partners and coercive sex (Eaton et al., 2003; Jewkes, Penn-Kekana & Junius, 2005, Richter & Dawes, 2008). The socio-economic transition has added a new feature to masculinity – that of material wealth. A man's ability to display material wealth and success improves his sexual desirability.

Although an early pregnancy seldom leads to marriage in African culture, acceptance or rejection of paternity plays a critical role in determining the respectability of a woman and her child (Kaufman et al., 2001; Varga, 2003). When paternity is accepted, it offers social and financial commitment to the child and dignity and respect to the mother and her family. But acceptance or rejection of paternity rests entirely with the male's family. Because sexual activity and material success rather than fertility have come to define masculinity and respect, paternity is often denied, particularly in urban environments, to protect educational, financial and career opportunities. Under these circumstances 'backstreet' abortion becomes a real possibility for women to avoid the stigma of an early pregnancy (Varga, 2003). Alternatively, as in most cases, the young woman and her family bear the financial and social responsibility for the child. Even if 'damage' payments are made as an acknowledgement of paternity, it does not always lead to continued social and financial responsibility for the child (Kaufman et al., 2001).

#### **Socio-economic status and poverty**

There is a substantial body of evidence indicating that one of the most consistent risk factors for early pregnancy is lower socio-economic status and poverty. Several studies conducted in developed and developing countries indicate that adolescent mothers are more likely to have been brought up in less-advantageous social environments, come from poor families and experience pre-existing disadvantages that results from poorer economic circumstances (Branch, 2006; Hallman, 2004; Hobcraft & Kiernan, 2001; Kirby, Coyle, & Gould, 2001; Miller et al., 2001; Russell, 2002; Woodward, Horwood & Fergusson, 2001). The cycle of poverty repeats itself, with pregnant adolescents beginning a lifelong trajectory of poverty for themselves and their children through truncated educational opportunities and poor job prospects (Aldaz-Carroll & Moran, 2001). As such, teenage motherhood serves as a mechanism by which poverty is passed down from generation to generation.

Studies conducted in SA confirm the link between lower socio-economic status and risky sexual behaviour as well as teenage pregnancy. Analysing household survey data collected in 2001, Hallman (2004) found that socio-economic disadvantage significantly increased the likelihood of a range of unsafe sexual behaviours and experiences, especially for females. These include early sexual debut, multiple sexual partnerships and lower levels of condom use at most recent sexual encounter. Similar results are reported in other South African studies (Dinkelman et al., 2008; Kelly & Parker, 2000). Poverty also raises young women's chances of experiencing coerced sex, both at sexual debut and during their lifetime as well as engaging in transactional sex. Hallman's (2004) analysis also revealed that lower socio-economic status reduces the odds of communicating with one's partner about

safe sexual practices for both males and females. Poorer young women were significantly more likely to have lower access to family planning information and to have experienced a pregnancy (Hallman, 2004).

Socio-economic disadvantage can lead to early childbearing through many different pathways (Kearney & Levine, 2007). It impacts the immediate context of pregnancy prevention, with higher status permitting greater access to information and better education, contraceptive services and child care facilities (Jewkes & Christofides, 2008). Adolescents who come from impoverished backgrounds may be unaware of the different options available to them, thus limiting their ability to make optimal choices. In fact, data from KwaZulu-Natal showed that between 1999 and 2001, learners attending low-resourced schools were less likely to receive life skills education than high-resourced schools (Magnani et al., 2003).

Growing up in disadvantaged circumstances reduces the incentive to avoid early motherhood (Kearney & Levine, 2007). Adolescents raised in poverty-stricken households may have been subjected to dysfunctional schools, poor education quality and may lack the motivation to prevent pregnancy perceiving they have little positive options (Grant et al., 2002; Jewkes & Christofides, 2008). The poor employment opportunities in these communities may further deter adolescents from staying in school and preventing pregnancy (Kearney & Levine, 2007). With low expectations about their own successes and future optimism, there are fewer incentives to prevent unwanted pregnancy (Jewkes & Christofides, 2008; Stevens-Simon & Lowy, 1995). In fact, Hendriksen et al. (2007) showed that optimism about the future was a significant predictor of condom use amongst young men.

Poverty in SA is pervasive. Using the Income and Expenditure Survey data and a poverty line of R322 a month, Bhorat & van der Westhuizen (2008) showed that poverty has declined by only five percentage points between 1995 (52.5 %) and 2005 (48.0 %). What is more, a fifth of the population (22.7%) still live in severe poverty (R174 per month). Poverty largely concentrates among the African (56.3 %) and Coloured (34.2 %) population groups although these groups experienced the largest declines in poverty between 1995 and 2005. Poverty also concentrates among young people. In 2003, the Status of Youth Report (Richter et al., 2005) showed that 34 percent of young people aged 18-35 were poor and 16 percent were ultra poor.

Another measure of disadvantage in SA is the unemployment rate. In 2007, 22 percent of the population were unemployed (Stats SA, 2007). Young people (51%), in particular, African males (47.3%) and females (57.8%) aged 15-24 bear the weight of the unemployment crisis in SA. In a context of high rates of poverty and unemployment the incentives to practice safe sex are few. Although young people in SA are generally optimistic about the future (87%) (Kaiser Family Foundation & SABC, 2006) and place high value on living a healthy life (93%), two thirds are concerned about not being able to find a job (68%) and being able to support their families (67%). It is these immediate concerns for economic security that confer risk either through lower incentives or through reciprocity of unprotected sex in exchange for 'lifts to school, gifts and subsistence cash' (MacPhail & Campbell, 2001). The inextricable link between adolescent motherhood and poverty and socio-economic disadvantage means that strengthening the negotiation and communication skills of young women and providing access to health services may not be enough (Hallman, 2005) to decrease risk for

pregnancy, STIs and HIV. These measures need to be supported by efforts to build the skills of women and create opportunities for livelihoods that would minimise trade off between health and economic security.

#### Public policy

Government policy has the power to influence the trajectory of teenage pregnancy through both direct and indirect ways. Policy decisions can determine the availability (or the lack thereof) of resources to provide critical services and to implement programmes (Brindis, 2006). Highly-politicised debates on public policy have the capacity to determine the direction of policy, the types of services that are made available to young people (Brindis, 2006) and to raise the consciousness of the public about the issue being discussed, often with the potential of producing shifts in norms. As the agency of young people to influence their own development and that of others is increasingly recognised, they become targets of policies and programmes (NRC & IOM, 2005). Some policy decisions are targeted at youth directly as primary decision makers, while others influence the context in which young people are growing up (NRC & IOM, 2005).

But the impact of national policy and programmes is often hard to measure and the available evidence, particularly, in developing countries is thin (NRC & IOM, 2005). Nevertheless, the declining teen pregnancy rates in SA have occurred in parallel with the institution of an enabling policy environment for young people. These include the increased availability of family planning services including termination of pregnancy, policies on life-skills education in schools, and government-funded media campaigns (Jewkes & Christofides, 2008). The latter two, although driven by rising HIV and AIDS rates among young people, have conferred benefits to teenage pregnancy. Other more indirect policy benefits have accrued through increased access to educational and economic opportunities for young people and the availability of social grants such as an old age pension and the CSG that have enabled parents to keep their children in school (Samson et al., 2004). The progressive approach adopted by the Department of Education to allow pregnant girls to remain in school and to return to school post-pregnancy has to some extent mitigated the educational and economic consequences of teenage pregnancy. In addition, it has also prevented the rapid childbearing that generally follows first birth. Despite a low mean age at first birth, second birth is significantly delayed in SA (Garenne et al., 2000) because of the opportunity to continue education (Kaufman et al., 2001).

While experts in the field have made the logical association between enabling policy and declines in teenage fertility in SA, much more rigorous empirical evidence is needed to support these conclusions. This is especially important in light of the fact that popular and political perception is that teenage fertility is increasing.

## SECONDARY ANALYSIS

South Africa is notable as a society where there are lower levels of marriage in comparison with many other parts of the world. This manifests as late age at first marriage and low marriage prevalence among women throughout their reproductive stage. However, late marriage or its absence has not led to postponement of reproduction by young people. Indeed, sexual activity tends to start immediately after the onset of puberty as was the case traditionally. Thus, as the age of

onset of puberty is declining – because of improving nutritional status, so has the start of the reproductive life of young people. The Status of the Youth Survey 2003 showed that the median age at sexual debut for young people aged 18-24 years was 16 for males and 17 for females (Richter et al., 2005). The median age of first birth of all women surveyed was found to be 20.

The HSRC Status of Youth Survey 2003 was used to identify the determinants of early pregnancy. As the median age of experiencing a first pregnancy was found to be 20, early pregnancy would fall within teenage years. The selection of independent variables was based on the socio-ecological model, which identifies different levels of influence for health-related behaviours and conditions: (1) individual, (2) interpersonal, (3) institutional, (4) community, and (5) public policy (National Cancer Institute, 2005). The table below presents only a subset of these levels, which were available in the Status of the Youth Survey data. These include family structure, location of childhood residence, the family economic situation and whether the child dropped out of school before becoming pregnant.

The logistic regression analysis outlined below predicts the probability of a woman experiencing an early pregnancy, under given social conditions. For example, a woman who grew up with both her mother and father has 71 out of 100 chances of experiencing a pregnancy (indicated by the odds ratio on the table) compared with a woman who grew up with other relatives. Only factors that have significance value (indicated in the table as 'sig') lower than 0.05 are regarded as having an impact on teenage fertility; i.e. we are 95 percent confident that the difference ascribed to the social condition is unlikely to have occurred by chance.

**Table 13: Selected social factors related to early pregnancy among women in SA, 2003**

VARIABLE	B	SE	SIG.	ODDS RATIO
<b>Family structure</b>				
<i>Other Relatives</i>				
Both mother and father present	-0.336	0.117	0.004	0.715
Mother only	-0.255	0.125	0.041	0.775
Father only	0.375	0.319	0.240	1.454
<b>Childhood residence</b>				
<i>Farm</i>				
Formal city	0.282	0.237	0.233	1.326
Informal city	0.520	0.257	0.043	1.682
Rural area	0.349	0.235	0.138	1.417
<b>Childhood financial situation</b>				
<i>Having enough basic needs when growing up</i>				
Not having enough basic needs	0.158	0.085	0.061	1.171
<b>Dropout from school</b>				
<i>Remained at school</i>				
Dropped out early from school	0.663	0.085	0.000	1.940

Source: Status of Youth Survey, 2003

Table 13 above shows that pregnancy among young South Africans is significantly influenced by the family structure, type of childhood residence, and incomplete education. Young people who grew up in families with both parents were least likely to experience early pregnancy. Presence of the mother is generally beneficial in terms of preventing early pregnancy. Young people who grew up in informal settlements compared to other types of residential areas were at highest risk of experiencing early childbearing. In addition, early school dropout almost doubled the odds of teenage childbearing.

The results outlined above indicate that a complex set of factors is related to teenage pregnancy, necessitating multilayered intervention strategies. Structural interventions that are aimed at retaining girls in school and mitigating factors associated with dysfunctional families and neighbourhoods are required.

#### Profile of male partners

Fathers have traditionally played the role of provider in the lives of their children (Bunting & McAuley, 2004; NRC & IOM, 2005), and when they are absent it places tremendous pressure on the teenage mother (De Villiers & Kekesi, 2004). Many of the negative life outcomes brought about by teenage pregnancy are better managed when the father has strong emotional ties to the child and provides support to both the mother and the child (Larson et al., 1996; Wiemann et al., 2006). By far the majority of studies on early parenthood focus on young women, shedding little light on the men who have impregnated them and rendering them as 'invisible or absent' (Bunting & McAuley, 2004; Coleman, 1998). When information is available about teenage fathers, it is usually from the perspective of the teenage mother (Landry & Forest, 1995; Reeves, 2007; Swartz & Bhana, 2009), and often presents men as perpetrators (Madhavan, Townsend & Garey, 2008; Morrel, 2007; Pattman, 2007).

A new genre of research on fatherhood in SA, however, has questioned the constructions of African males, in particular, as bad and sexually irresponsible (Madhavan, Townsend & Garey, 2008; Richter & Morrel, 2006; Swartz & Bhana, 2009). While being a provider is a deeply entrenched definition of what it means to be a father in SA, the changing socio-economic landscape where more and more workers live with their families, means that fathers can begin to extend their role beyond providers to carers, and be more engaged in their children's lives (Morrell & Richter, 2006). It is this role of father as carer and protector that prompted an advocacy campaign in SA, titled the Fatherhood Project that aimed to gather information about the role that men are playing in their children's lives together with generating new knowledge about fatherhood.

As a result, a growing body of literature is now available on fatherhood in SA. However, little information is available on who *young fathers* are and how they experience early parenthood. While inferences can be drawn from the limited body of literature in the US and UK, a recent qualitative study among African and Coloured young men from impoverished communities in Cape Town and Durban provides invaluable insights into the experiences of young fatherhood (Swartz & Bhana, 2009).

#### Who are young fathers?

Few studies have examined the risk factors associated with early fatherhood, yet the available evidence suggests that young fathers' risk profile is no different than that of young mothers. Studies from the US and the UK indicate that young fathers tend to be poor, continuing the

intergenerational cycle of teenage fatherhood (Bunting & McAuley, 2004; Coley & Chase-Landsdale, 1998). Young fathers also report low educational attainment and come from low-income communities. As a result, they seldom have the financial resources to support the child and the mother. Poor educational performance has been identified as a powerful predictor of young fatherhood, and similar to young women often predates fatherhood (Dearden, Hale & Woolley, 1995).

In fact, secondary analysis of the HSRC 2003 Status of Youth Survey shows that early school dropout is significantly associated with fatherhood in the teenage years. As with young women, premature exit from the school system almost doubles the odds of young men fathering a child early on.

**Table 14: Selected social factors related to early pregnancy among young men in SA, 2003**

VARIABLE	B	SE	SIG.	ODDS RATIO
<b>Family structure</b>				
<i>Other Relatives</i>				
Both mother and father present	-0.144	0.138	0.298	0.866
Mother only	0.082	0.153	0.593	1.086
Father only	0.406	0.316	0.199	1.501
<b>Childhood residence</b>				
<i>Farm</i>				
Formal city	0.203	0.312	0.516	1.225
Informal city	-0.179	0.354	0.613	0.836
Rural area	0.320	0.312	0.306	1.377
<b>Childhood financial situation</b>				
<i>Having enough basic needs when growing up</i>				
Not having enough basic needs	0.060	0.115	0.603	1.061
<b>Dropout from school</b>				
<i>Remained at school</i>				
Dropped out early from school	0.621	0.114	0.000	1.862

Source: Status of Youth Survey, 2003

Low socio-economic status is a significant predictor of teenage pregnancy among both young male and female parents. The concentration of poverty among African-American communities in the US means that young men from these communities are more likely to father children while under the age of 20 compared to other race groups (Clark, Zabin, & Hardy, 1984; Rivara, Sweeney & Henderson, 1987). Given the high levels of socio-economic disadvantage and teenage pregnancy among African and Coloured communities in SA, it can be reasonably assumed that early fatherhood would concentrate in these communities. However, determinant studies are required to map the profile of young fathers in SA.

Two schools of thought have been put forward about the age of male partners. While some studies report that partners of teenage mothers

are themselves teenagers, others report partners as being older. Larson *et al.*, (1996) indicated that the mean age of male partners was 19.5 years, while Taylor *et al.*, (1999) showed that teenage mothers were impregnated by males who were at least eight years older than themselves. In fact, a review of the antecedents of teenage pregnancy in the US reported involvement with older male partners as a significant risk factor for early pregnancy (Kirby, 2007). Regional data on age patterns of first parenthood showed that very small percentages of young men in Eastern and Southern Africa (1.7%) report early fatherhood (NRC & IOM, 2005). Although the low percentages may be indicative of the inability of men to verify paternity, the small proportion might also be an indication that teenage girls are impregnated by older men.

Mixed reports with regards to the age of male partners are also provided in SA. Several South African studies (Wood *et al.*, 1997; Jewkes *et al.*, 2001) have indicated that boyfriends of pregnant teenagers tend to be older. However, the 2003 RHRU National Survey indicated that two thirds of young women were in fact involved in sexual relations with their peers (Pettifor *et al.*, 2005). While only 9.7 percent of females were involved with a male partner of the same age, 57.7 percent reported that their partner was one to four years older and 32.6 percent reported that their most recent partner was at least five years older.

#### *Attitudes towards early fatherhood*

Much like young women, young men report a strong emotional response – of shock, fear, shame and embarrassment, on hearing about their impending fatherhood (Swartz & Bhana, 2009). While most teenage fathers involved in the study were not ready for fatherhood, they expressed a deep sense of responsibility for the child and a willingness to be actively involved in the child's life. Unlike reports from the perspective of young women, few young men spoke of denying paternity. In the context of multiple sexual partnerships these young men were uncertain if they were the father of the child. In addition, they expressed a fear of being stigmatised by the teen mothers' family due to their inability to provide financial support to the child.

For young men interviewed by Swartz & Bhana (2006), being a father had little to do with proving fertility and masculinity as with being present ('being there'), talking to and guiding children, and providing financial support. A qualitative study among young Zulu school students also reported that fatherhood was not about affirming masculinity or social standing, but about 'being there' and providing for their children (Morrell, 2007). Studies in the US and UK also report on the sense of responsibility that young men associate with fatherhood and the strong desire to be actively involved in the lives of their children (Bunting & McAuley, 2004).

Both local (Swartz & Bhana, 2009) and international (Bunting & McAuley, 2004) studies show that the key motivation to be present and to participate in their children's lives is the absence of their own fathers. South Africa has a sizeable proportion of 'hidden fathers', especially among the African population (Posel & Devey, 2006). In 2002, an estimated 55 percent of African children living in rural areas had absent fathers (Posel & Devey, 2006). The notion of the absent father has its roots in the historical migrant labour system where African men migrated to urban areas in search of work without their spouses and children (Montgomery *et al.*, 2006). Although the migrant labour system persists in contemporary society, high levels of unemployment also serve as a significant barrier to young African men paying *ilobolo*

(bridewealth). As a result, marriage is delayed, and care for children is often compromised.

#### *Barriers to teen fatherhood*

Despite the deep sense of responsibility expressed by young fathers towards their children in the study by Swartz & Bhana (2009), a number of factors serve as barriers to them fulfilling their role as father (see Table 16). Chief amongst these is the 'carer versus financial provider' role, poor relationship with the female partner and her family, and cultural factors related to negotiation of paternity and ongoing responsibility for the child.

**Table 15: Factors affecting young fathers' well-being and participation in parenting**

- The cultural measure of responsibility equated with money
- Young men's view of money dominant over practices and qualities
- Rejection by mother of child's family
- High unemployment rates
- Multiple concurrent partnerships amongst young men
- Ignorance about basic biology and contraception
- Foreshortened view of the future
- Parents hijacking young fathers' responsibility
- Geographical separation between father and child
- The failure of services and sex education

Source: Swartz & Bhana, 2009

Even though young men identify both caring (being present and talking) and provider roles as what it means to be a good father, in practice, caring is overtaken by the deeply-entrenched need to provide for the child financially. 'Father as the provider' is what was role-modelled by their own fathers (or a role that they want to change because of their fathers' absence) and is what is generally viewed as the traditional role of fathers. More modern conceptions may be challenging this uni-dimensional role of fathers, but nevertheless still takes on a secondary role to financial provision. Studies in the US and UK also highlight the strong provider role that young fathers adopt (Coley & Chase-Landsdale, 1998; Bunting & McAuley, 2004; Speake, Cameron & Gilroy, 1997). This is often in conflict with the view of young women who perceive male partners as being absent because of their failure to assist with child-rearing responsibilities. But taking on financial responsibility is often beyond the reach of young men in SA because of incomplete education and high levels of unemployment. As a result, they 'feel small' - 'like a kid' because of their inability to care for their children financially. Such a discourse is indicative of the fractured transitions and internal conflict that young people face when parenthood precedes education and work. While parenthood may confer the status of a man, the lack of education and work opportunities to fulfil the role of provider, renders him a boy.

Families, together with the relationship with the mother of the child, also play a seminal role in the level of involvement that a young father enjoys in his child's life. While mothers of young fathers are recognised as significant sources of emotional and financial support, they may inadvertently prevent young men from taking on responsibility for their children in an attempt to protect their educational opportunities. The young woman's family, however, and

particularly her mother and male members of her family, are considered to be the biggest hindrance to young men taking on fatherhood responsibilities. Often a young man is denied access to the child when he has a falling out with the teen mother or because he is considered an unsuitable partner for her. Studies from the US have also indicated that mothers are a significant source of support for young fathers but that conflict with the mother of the child, and particularly, maternal grandparents, are a significant barrier to a young father's continued involvement in the life of his child (Miller, 1994; Miller, 1997; Rhein et al., 1997).

In SA, cultural rites, intended to facilitate access to children, can sometimes also serve as a barrier to young men establishing relationships with their children (Swartz & Bhana, 2006). As alluded to earlier in the report, acknowledgement of paternity in the African population rests with the male's family and is negotiated through 'damage' payments to the teenage mother's family as a compensation for early pregnancy. Young fathers are often not included in the negotiations because they seldom have completed initiation rites that afford them the authority and standing to participate in such processes. In addition, often they do not have the financial means to make damage payments. In ceding responsibility for damage payments to families, young men inadvertently also cede responsibility for childcare

arrangements. In such a context, despite good intentions, young fathers often become estranged from their children.

Just like young mothers, young fathers require support to improve their educational and economic circumstances in order to fulfil caregiver and provider roles. In the absence of institutional support, families play a critical role in cushioning the blow of early fatherhood by taking on care-giving roles. But in some cases, cultural practices that govern family responses – while no doubt well intended, serve to estrange young men from their children. While a greater understanding of culture and continued father involvement in children's lives is warranted (Swartz & Bhana, 2009), together with much more empirical data on young fatherhood, other policy options may have to be considered to ensure paternal support for children. These include gender-based interventions that extend the repertoire of fatherhood beyond 'providing' to being 'present and talking', especially in impoverished conditions where unemployment and poverty is high. In addition, consideration should be given to legal child support arrangements, much like in the US, where legislative interventions have resulted in increased levels of paternal involvement among children of teenage mothers (Coley & Chase-Lansdale, 1998). SA does have the CSG and Maintenance Act of 1998, but both do not accommodate teenage fathers. This represents a missed opportunity for increasing support to the child.

## POLICY AND PROGRAMMES

Determining the best policy and programme direction for teenage pregnancy requires sober reflection on the 'complexity and kaleidoscopic nature of the problem' (Brindis, 2006). Kirby (2007), in a recent comprehensive review of interventions to prevent teenage pregnancy and STIs in the US, offers some guidelines about where and with whom to intervene. The review identified more than 500 factors that influence adolescent sexual behaviour. Some of these are inherent to who the young person is, but many more are rooted in the context in which young people grow up - families, partners, peers and communities. As such, single strategies directed at individuals will not radically change the trajectory of teenage pregnancy and STIs. Nevertheless, they are an important part of the mix of interventions because all young people at some point in their lives will encounter their sexuality. Having complete and accurate knowledge and the right mix of skills will assist them in making health-promoting decisions. Some young people, however, are at increased risk for pregnancy because of the imbalance in protective and risk factors, often linked to multiple sources of disadvantage in the homes and communities in which they grow up. For these young people, targeted and intensive programmes will be required to alter negative trajectories.

Some realism must also be applied to factors that are amenable to change and those that are not and, particularly, what might be the most effective contribution that a particular sector can make to such a multi-faceted problem. To reduce risk for teenage pregnancy requires comprehensive interventions in the school, the home, the health care setting, in communities and society at large. Because the strongest and most proximal determinants of sexual behaviour, and those most amenable to change, are young people's knowledge, attitudes, norms and confidence in their skills, prevention programmes should focus on evidence-based education programmes. These need to be supported by interventions among partners, peers, families and siblings - the most proximal role models for adolescent sexual behaviour. Although non-sexual risk factors are modestly related to teenage pregnancy and STIs, some of these can be modified and should be addressed through interventions.

But the context also needs to be taken into account in deciding on the mix of interventions. Although the evidence of risk factors for early pregnancy are not as advanced in SA as in the US, available evidence suggests that structural factors such as poor educational and economic prospects and cultural constructions of femininity and masculinity, underpinned by gender imbalances, create disincentives for, and disempower, women to protect themselves against pregnancy. While these factors are not readily amenable to change, should we choose not to invest in changing them, radical changes in teenage pregnancy, STIs and HIV will not be achieved. Sexuality is a shared activity between two partners. It makes little sense to empower women about their sexuality without concomitant efforts to empower young men.

Although strong arguments exist for the thrust of interventions for adolescents to focus on prevention, the unabated and increasing levels of marginalisation of young people across a range of domains (education, employment, health and well-being and civic engagement) provide impetus for a more systematic focus on treatment, care and support. Termed, *second chances*, by the 2007 *World Development Report - Development and the Next Generation* (World Bank, 2006), the

approach recognises the extent to which policy and programmatic failures, rather than poorly-informed choices by youth alone, have borne a heavy burden on young people resulting in their increased marginalisation (World Bank, 2006). Even if we instituted the most rigorous prevention programmes, some young women will experience early pregnancy. Although remediation is costly and difficult to achieve, it far outweighs the costs to a society of lost human capital potential. A systematic and more formalised system of support is required for those who do become pregnant. Such programmes of support need to reach beyond addressing the health consequences of pregnancy to mitigating the educational, economic, educational and social challenges that young mothers and fathers face.

The following section outlines both prevention and second chance policies and programmes for teenage pregnancy. Clearly, given the strong prevention focus among adolescents, the weight of the evidence will be biased towards prevention. However, examples of second chance programmes will be outlined where they exist. Within the prevention realm, strongest evidence is available for curriculum-based intervention and most of these have been instituted in the school setting. Given that the report is being prepared for the Department of Education, the review will focus primarily on school-based or school-linked interventions. It must be noted, however, that while substantial evidence for the effectiveness of health policy and programmes is available from the US, as indicated earlier, the empirical evidence supporting the effectiveness of interventions in developing countries is thin at best and supports only tentative conclusions about effectiveness (NRC & IOM, 2005). In addition, while a few studies are focused on unintended pregnancy, most are in fact focused on STIs and HIV.

## PREVENTION PROGRAMMES

### *School-based sex education*

The high enrolment rates of adolescents in the school setting, provides an important access point for interventions on sexual and reproductive health. Most young people who attend school have not initiated sexual activity and for some, schooling coincides with the onset of sex. As such, the high coverage of adolescents in the school setting provides an important leverage point to delay the onset of sex and to ensure that those who are sexually active are able to adequately protect themselves (Kirby, Obasi & Laris, 2006).

A review of 56 curriculum-based programmes in the US - half of which were implemented in the school setting, reported that there is strong evidence that sex education can both delay sex and promote safe sex (Kirby, 2007). Two thirds of the programmes reviewed had a significant impact on at least one aspect of sexual behaviour, or lowered rates of pregnancy, childbearing, or STIs. While the 48 comprehensive programmes that focused on both abstinence and contraceptive use showed strong positive effects on sexual behaviour and importantly, did not increase sexual behaviour, the eight abstinence-only programmes showed no impact in delaying sexual initiation. About two thirds of the comprehensive programmes, on the other hand, delayed the initiation of sex, reduced the frequency of sex and number of partners, increased condom and contraceptive use or reduced risky sexual behaviour. As such there is strong empirical support for comprehensive programmes that focus on both abstinence and contraceptive use rather than abstinence only programmes.

But the programmes reported only modest effects on sexual behaviour, pregnancy or STI rates. The most effective programmes reduced risky sexual behaviour by about a third. In addition, durability of programme effects was not sufficiently demonstrated. While effects of a few programmes lasted for years, most did not measure long-term impact. What is noteworthy, however, is that comprehensive programmes were equally effective and replicable with a variety of communities in different settings (e.g., urban vs. rural, low vs. middle income and boys vs. girls). While educational programmes are not the panacea for pregnancy, STIs and HIV, they can play an important role as part of a comprehensive strategy to positively influence sexual behaviour (Kirby, 2007).

In reviewing 19 of the most effective curricula for sex-based education, Kirby (2007) identified 17 characteristics that were common to these programmes. These characteristics, presented in Table 16, can be clustered into three categories: the process of developing the curriculum, the content of the curriculum and the process of implementation.

**Table 16: Characteristics of effective curriculum-based programmes**

PROCESS OF DEVELOPING THE CURRICULUM	CONTENT OF CURRICULUM	IMPLEMENTATION OF THE CURRICULUM
Involve multiple people with expertise in theory, research, and STI/HIV education to develop the curriculum	Focus on clear health goals, e.g. prevention of STI/HIV/pregnancy or all three	Secure support from the appropriate authorities, such as departments of health, school districts or community organisations
Assess the relevant needs and assets of the target group	Focus specifically on behaviour leading to goals e.g., using condoms, give clear messages about behaviour, address the situations that lead to them, and how to avoid STIs, HIV and pregnancy	Select educators with the desired characteristics (where possible), train them, and provide monitoring, supervision and support
Use a logical model (health and psychosocial theory) to specify health goals, behaviours that affect goals, risk and protective factors affecting behaviour and activities to change risk and protective factors	Address sexual risk and protective factors that affect sexual behaviour (e.g. knowledge, perceived risk, value, attitudes, norms and self-efficacy) and change them	If required, implement activities to recruit and keep adolescents to overcome barriers to participation (e.g., publicise the programme, offer food or obtain parental consent)
Design activities consistent with community values and available resources, (e.g. staff time, skills, space and supplies	Create a safe space for young people to participate	Implement virtually all activities with reasonable fidelity
Pilot-test the programme	<p>Include multiple activities to change risk and protective factors</p> <p>Use instructionally-sound teaching methods that actively involve participants, help them personalise information and are designed to change risk and protective factors</p> <p>Use activities, teaching methods, and behavioural messages appropriate to the adolescents' culture, developmental age, and sexual experience</p> <p>Cover topics in a logical sequence</p>	

Source: Kirby, 2007

A few reviews have been undertaken on sex-based (or specifically school-based) education programmes in developing countries (see for example Kaaya, Mukoma, Flisher & Klepp, 2002; Kirby, Laris & Roller, 2005; Gallant & Maticka-Tyndale, 2004; Speizer, Magnani & Colvin, 2003). While these reviews were able to demonstrate the positive effect of school-based programmes in improving knowledge, they did not demonstrate strong

effects on improving skills, changing values and norms, and changing behaviour. More recently, Kirby, Obasi and Laris (2006), undertook a systematic review of 22 interventions that used either experimental or quasi-experimental designs with the purpose of filling the gaps of previous reviews.

There was strong evidence for the effect of school-based sex education and HIV education interventions on adolescent sexual behaviour. While the interventions did not increase sexual activity, they did report positive effects in delaying sexual activity, reducing the number of sexual partners, reducing the frequency of sex and increasing condom and contraceptive use. There was also ample evidence for the effect of programmes on knowledge but less consistent effects on improving skills or changing values, attitudes and peer norms. The strongest evidence for programmes that had an impact on behaviour was curriculum-based and led by adults (either teachers or other adults such as health workers). Only two curriculum-based programmes were implemented by peers, one of which showed some evidence for positive impact on sexual behaviour. In line with evidence from developed countries (Kirby, 2007), the most effective curriculum-based interventions incorporated four fifths of the 17 criteria identified for effective sex education in Table 17 above. In addition, like developed countries, findings were shown to be robust, in that they were equally effective among different subgroups in different settings. Despite the strong effect of interventions on sexual behaviour, only one study measured the effect of programmes on STI rates and pregnancy and showed no impact. The review concluded that given the strong evidence of programmes in improving knowledge and reducing sexual risk behaviour, school-based interventions that are curriculum-based, led by adults and incorporate most of the characteristics of effective programmes described in Table 17 should be taken to scale. However, there is a need for many more rigorous evaluation studies of school-based interventions involving large enough sample sizes to detect effects, and that specifically measure impact of programmes on biological outcomes such as STI, HIV and pregnancy rates.

A systematic evaluation of school-based sex/HIV education programmes in SA was undertaken by Mukoma and Flisher (2008). Although not directly focused on teenage pregnancy, life skills programmes introduced in schools in response to the explosion of the HIV epidemic in the 1990s have the potential to influence the trajectory of teenage pregnancy. Life skills programmes were introduced in schools to increase learner's knowledge of HIV, improve their skills for engaging in health relationships by improving communication and decision-making ability and to shift attitudes about people living with HIV and AIDS. A range of factors limit the number of firm conclusions that can be reached about the overall effectiveness of programmes in SA. Mukoma & Flisher (2008) were only able to identify a small number (12) of evaluation studies, only two of which were conducted in the past five years and most of which (5) were undertaken in the Western Cape. They generally involved small sample sizes of students and schools and the variability in how and by whom they were designed and implemented, their duration, intensity, and the questions used in the evaluation, make comparison across studies difficult. In addition, the weak design of evaluation studies (very few involving control groups and lack of follow up post-intervention beyond two months) makes it difficult to assign changes in behaviour to the interventions. In general, while programmes did show positive effects on knowledge, attitudes and communication about sexuality, they had little or no effect on behaviour.

While the lack of effects may in part be attributed to the design of the programmes themselves and how the evaluation studies were conducted, the degree to which the programmes were implemented as intended also needs to be investigated. This could not be thoroughly assessed in the review by Mukoma and Flisher (2008) as most studies focused on outcomes evaluation to the neglect of process evaluation that would provide such insight. However, a few South African studies have alluded to failure to implement programmes fully in schools as one of the reasons for their limited effects (James et al., 2006; Magnani et al., 2005; Visser, 2005). James et al., (2006) showed only an increase in knowledge about HIV in their evaluation of a life-skills programme in KwaZulu-Natal. However, when their analysis was restricted to schools that had fully implemented the programme, more positive effects were reported on perceptions of sexual behaviour, social connectedness, levels of sexual activity and condom use.

Failure to implement programmes as intended may be related to teachers' attitude, skill and preparedness to teach sex/HIV education as well as the level of priority afforded to- and acceptance of- sex education within the education system. A recent evaluation of teacher training on an AIDS prevention programme in schools showed that, despite intensive training, teachers lacked adequate and accurate knowledge on HIV, they struggled with non-didactic methods of teaching required for skills development such as role play, and they showed discomfort in teaching areas of the curriculum (such as safe sex practices) that conflicted with their own value system (Ahmed et al., 2006). The study recommended that sex education should be integrated into undergraduate teacher training courses to improve teachers' knowledge, skills and comfort in teaching about HIV (Ahmed et al., 2006). In addition, Visser (2005) also reported on the lack of commitment towards the programme by teachers and principals, organisational problems in schools (lack of allocated time and human resources) and competing priorities in the school system that contributed towards limited implementation of programmes. A shift in the climate of the education system that is supportive of, and views sex education as a priority, is required for programmes to be effectively implemented (Visser, 2005).

Although the evidence for the effectiveness of sex education in SA is not as convincing, the available international experience suggests that the question is not *whether* sex education should be provided but *how* its effects can be optimised (Mukoma & Flisher, 2006). Incorporating as many of the characteristics that constitute good programmes may assist in improving the outcomes of sex/HIV education in SA. In addition, well designed evaluation studies are required in SA to demonstrate and improve the effectiveness of school-based sex education programmes. To ensure a distinct focus on pregnancy, life-skills evaluation studies should also include responsibilities of parenthood, knowledge and skills required for successful parenthood, together with the importance of planning for- and timing of- parenthood (NRC & IOM, 2005).

#### **School-based/linked health services**

A limited number of studies have evaluated the effectiveness of school-based /linked health services in the US as well as the distribution of condoms in schools and the evidence is mixed (Kirby, 2007). School-based clinics are either available on the school premises or are located close to the school. While more than 80 percent of school clinics provide a range of reproductive health services, only about 25 percent dispense hormonal contraception or condoms (Kirby, 2007). Providing



contraceptives through school-based clinics and making condoms available in schools *do not* increase the onset or frequency of sex. Instead, when contraception is available through school clinics and condoms can be obtained easily and confidentially on school premises, many sexually-active students make use of these services. But obtaining contraception from school-based sources is dependent on how widely it is available in the community. Studies that showed an increase in condoms obtained from school sources also reported a concomitant decrease in condoms obtained from other sources in the community. As such, a substitution effect occurred. In other words, schools can be an important source of condoms when they are not readily available from other sources in the community.

The evidence from the US for increased contraceptive use and decreased childbearing as a result of school-based or school-linked health services is both weak and mixed (Kirby, 2007). More promising results were reported in two school and health facility-based programmes in developing countries (NRC & IOM, 2005). While the study in Nigeria reported increased condom use and decreased self-reported symptoms of STIs, the study in Chile reported an increase in the age of sexual debut among males and increase in contraceptive use among girls. However, the latter study did not improve the use of contraceptives at last sex; neither did it improve the volume of young people attending health facilities during the two-year follow-up period.

#### Parenting

As the primary socialising agents for children, parents are well positioned to influence the sexual behaviour of their children. Yet parents and adolescents seldom discuss sexuality because of the discomfort related to talking about sex. A number of interventions have been trialed in the US to improve parent-child communication and a limited number of studies have focused on improving parenting involvement and monitoring. While studies report difficulty in recruiting parents into multi-session programmes, when they do participate, parents increase their own comfort in talking about sex and in communicating with their children about sexuality in the short-term (Kirby, 2007). In addition, while the available evidence of the impact of such interventions on adolescent sexual behaviour is limited, it does suggest that parent-child programmes can influence sexual behaviour, particularly condom use (Kirby, 2007).

As discussed earlier, a randomised control trial in rural KwaZulu-Natal to strengthen family relationships and social capital in the community as a protective shield against HIV, showed strong effects among parents and community processes but less so on young people (Bell et al., 2008). The programme was able to increase caregiver comfort in talking about sensitive issues with their children, improve monitoring and control of children's whereabouts and strengthen support networks among community members to exert informal social control. However, among youth, the programme effects were limited to improved knowledge on HIV transmission and less stigma towards people infected with HIV. As the intervention focused on pre-adolescents, outcomes in terms of sexual behaviour were not appropriate for the study.

Much more research on programmes for parents and their children is required before firm conclusions can be reached about their effectiveness and widespread application (Kirby, 2007).

#### Peer programmes

Peer programmes have gained currency over the years as a strategy to intervene with adolescent sexual and reproductive health because they take advantage of existing networks of communication and interaction, and because peers have been identified as important determinants in adolescent sexuality and a range of adolescent risk behaviours. Peer programmes generally recruit and train a core group of young people who, in turn, serve as role models, and sources of information and skills development on adolescent sexuality (Speizer et al., 2003). Peer educators have participated in a number of multi-component programmes, complementing teachers in school-based programmes, distributing condoms outside of health services, creating a demand for health services in community-based settings, and in a number of mass media interventions (Speizer et al., 2003). Even though peer education is widely diffused programmatically both locally and internationally, it has not been defined conceptually (Shiner, 1999) and its theoretical underpinnings are yet to be clarified (Turner & Shepherd, 1999). The lack of clarity about the processes and mechanisms that lead to successful programmes as well as standards of practice for peer education means that new modalities are constantly invented with little evidence for their effectiveness, which ultimately impedes evaluation and scale up (Bastien, Flisher, Mathews & Klepp, 2006; Deutsch, Michel & Swartz, 2003).

A review of peer education programmes in sub-Saharan Africa reported a massive increase in the number of programmes since the 1990s but few methodologically-sound evaluation studies to support their increasing popularity (Bastien et al., 2006). Although studies report positive outcomes, they are generally focused on knowledge, attitudes and beliefs and the number of peer educators that have been trained using relatively small sample sizes. In addition, few studies use robust designs and include biological outcome measures such as STIs /HIV and pregnancy. Studies also do not provide an adequate description of the process of setting up the intervention, including recruitment of peer educators and content of training. The use of peer education as part of multi-component interventions makes it difficult to attribute effects to the peer education component of the programme.

A review of three peer interventions in Peru, Ghana and Cameroon that were located within the school and community settings, showed consistent positive impact on psychosocial factors such as knowledge, attitudes and self-efficacy and some evidence for effects on sexual activity, contraceptive use and condom use (Speizer et al, 2003). Non-experimental studies are also indicative of declines in unplanned pregnancies, number of sexual partners and increase in condom use among university students. However, given the developmental process that peer educators are undergoing, the largest effects of programmes are often on peer educators themselves and the cost of regularly having to recruit and retrain peer educators may be prohibitive (NRC & IOM, 2005). In fact, a well-designed, multi-component adolescent sexual and reproductive health programme in the Mwanza region in Tanzania, showed that rural learners in primary schools lacked the cognitive ability and skills to transfer knowledge to peers (Bastien et al., 2006). The study concluded that the peer component of the programme was not feasible because of the cost of retraining groups of peers as opposed to investing in teacher training. While peers could facilitate some aspects of the training such as ice breakers around sensitive issues and drama performances, careful consideration would have to be given to matching the activities of peer educators to their abilities.

Given the scale of the HIV epidemic among young people in SA, the country has invested in defining standards of practice for-, and evaluation of- peer education programmes. Termed 'Rutanang' – a Sotho word meaning 'learning from one another', the process has resulted in a set of guidelines for the development, implementation and evaluation of peer programmes (Deutsch & Swartz, 2002). The guidelines identify four roles for peer educators:

- Educating peers in a structured manner;
- Serving as role models for healthy behaviour;
- Identifying youth who need assistance and making necessary referrals; and
- Serving as advocates to secure resources for themselves and their peers.

The guidelines identify 10 elements that are essential for peer education programmes in SA. These include: (1) Planning and needs assessments; (2) Mobilising the necessary support from relevant stakeholders; (3) Setting up supervisory infrastructure for peer educators; (4) Identifying linkages for referral; (5) Developing a learning programme that goes beyond awareness raising; (6) Setting up infrastructure for selecting, training and contracting peer educators; (7) Managing peer educators and supervisors; (8) Providing means of recognising and credentialing peer educators; (9) Monitoring and evaluating outcomes; and (10) Ensuring the sustainability of programmes.

A recent evaluation study of peer education programmes in SA indicated that a large number of programmes are being implemented using a variety of methodologies to inform programme design (Ward et al., 2007). While a number of settings are used (schools, universities, youth clubs, social meeting spaces, shebeens and nightclubs) most programmes are school-based or target school-going youth. Even though the majority of programmes target secondary school learners, they are largely focused on abstinence messaging. This often does not match the sexual behaviour of peer educators or of the target audience of the programme. The review concluded that when the Rutanang guidelines are used to guide the development and implementation of programmes, they result in sound interventions. However, the study indicated that beyond curriculum design, most interventions that were included in the review did not use the guidelines for conducting needs assessments, setting up referral systems, or for monitoring and evaluation, probably because they were not a requirement of their funding compacts or that these components of the programme were more technically challenging. Although impact evaluation studies were rare, anecdotal evidence suggests that well-developed programmes have the ability to impact on self-esteem, confidence and resistance of peer pressure for both participants and peer educators. There is also some evidence for behaviour change in terms of secondary abstinence, condom use and remaining faithful to one partner. These findings need to be confirmed through well-designed evaluation studies but nevertheless provide support for the use of peer education programmes for adolescent sexual and reproductive health in SA.

In fact, evidence from loveLife, South Africa's largest public health intervention for HIV and AIDS among young people, suggests that participation in peer education programmes are contributing towards the development of a new generation of leadership from the most marginalised communities. loveLife has trained 1 200 young people as peer educators – known as 'groundBREAKERS' - between 2001 and 2005. These peer leaders, together with local volunteers (known as

'mpintshis'), engage in local mobilisation in over 700 communities and 4 000 schools. A recent survey among peer leaders indicates that participation in the programme has increased education, employment and civic engagement opportunities well beyond the national norms for this age group among these young people, and that a significant percentage are taking up leadership roles in community structures (VOSESA, 2008). For example, whereas 45 percent of groundBREAKERS were pursuing further studies, only 30 percent in this age group were doing so nationally. In addition, whereas 75 percent of young people nationally are not involved in community organisations, 55 percent of groundBREAKERS continue their community work after graduating from the programme. GroundBREAKERS also report a strong future orientation, positive sense of self and greater confidence in building the networks that are necessary to attain future goals. They also report much more egalitarian views towards men's and women's roles in relationships and the ability to successfully negotiate relationships with partners and peers.

### *Sexual and reproductive health services*

#### **Access to family planning services**

Family planning services are provided to young people with the purpose of making available reproductive health services, providing contraception including condoms and improving their knowledge and skill to use them (Kirby, 2007). While there is evidence from the US that considerable numbers of young people make use of family planning services (up to 40 percent of 15-19 year olds in the US), the evidence on the impact of such services on sexual behaviour and pregnancy is limited (Kirby, 2007). Evidence from the Family PACT Programme in California showed that providing comprehensive family and reproductive health services to young people at no cost, resulted in a three-fold increase in the use of services by adolescents - from 99 739 visits per year to over 300 000 visits per year. No doubt the increased availability and use of contraception by young people through such services averts many unintended pregnancies. However, long-term evaluation studies are required to demonstrate the positive link between family planning services and sexual behaviour.

Young people in SA have benefited from a number of health policies directed at the population at large. Several interventions have been instituted within the rubric of family planning services. In particular, contraception has been made available at primary health care clinics and other mobile services at no cost since 1974. While vertical family planning services were directed primarily at African population control during *Apartheid*, post-1994 significant efforts have been made to promote a human rights and integrated approach towards reproductive health care (DOH, 2001). Dramatic increases in the use of contraception are indicative of the success of family planning services, although the quality of care has not always been optimal. As indicated earlier, contraceptive use, particularly condom use, has increased significantly since the 1998 SADHS (DOH, MRC & Measure DHS, 2002). In fact, most young people feel confident about being able to easily access condoms if they need to (Pettifor et al., 2004). Government clinics and hospitals are the principal source of condoms for over 70 percent of young people (Shisana et al., 2005).

But over half of sexually-active young people do not use contraception when they have sex. While a range of socio-cultural factors determine contraceptive use, one of the principal reasons for non-use, is that sex

is often not planned (Kirby, 2007) and happens on the spur of the moment (Jewkes et al., 2001). While emergency contraception cannot be used as a regular form of contraception, it can dramatically reduce the chances of pregnancy if used within 72 hours after sex (Kirby, 2007). Four studies in the US found that providing emergency contraception to young women in advance dramatically increased its use but did not produce the negative effects of increasing sexual activity (Kirby, 2007). Sample sizes were too small to detect effects on pregnancy rates. Although strong recommendations are made for the extensive promotion and ready availability of emergency contraception within the *Policy Framework for the Provision and use of Contraception in SA* (DOH, 2001), legal regulations (must be bought over the counter from a health professional) and, particularly, the negative and judgemental attitude of health staff (Wood & Jewkes, 2006) prevent young people from using this contraceptive method. Given its safety and efficacy (DOH, 2001), consideration should be given to deregulating emergency contraception in SA in order to increase its availability and usage.

#### **Adolescent-friendly services**

One of the earliest health interventions instituted by the democratic government in SA was the provision of free health care (including contraception) at primary health care clinics as well as to pregnant and lactating women and to children up to the age of six. However, for various reasons related to accessibility and acceptability of services as well as fear and shame regarding teenage pregnancy, young women avoid accessing family planning services or delay accessing antenatal services until very late in their pregnancy (Richter, Norris & Ginsberg, 2006). Over two decades of research have demonstrated the various barriers that young people face when trying to access health services (Tylee et al., 2007). These include:

*Availability:* Lack of primary health care services and restrictive laws and policies that prevent adolescents from accessing certain services;

*Accessibility:* Lack of convenience in terms of long travelling distances, inconvenient opening times, costs of services and poor knowledge of services being offered;

*Acceptability:* Lack of trust in, and confidentiality by, health workers, poor physical environment of the clinic that does not lend itself to maintaining confidentiality, judgemental attitude of health workers and poor quality of health services; and

*Equitability:* Services are friendlier to youth from high socio-economic groups than youth from disadvantaged backgrounds such as young people living and working on the streets

Health services can play an instrumental role in the sexual and reproductive health of adolescents when services are youth friendly; i.e. they are accessible, acceptable, appropriate, effective and equitable (WHO, 2002). Access to health care, particularly reproductive health, is a human right obligation and, in particular, critical for reducing the impact of the HIV and AIDS epidemic (Dick et al., 2006). As such, over the past two decades, there has been growing awareness of the need to make health services more responsive to the needs of adolescents. However, available data to monitor health service provision is weak and what data is available suggests that there has been slow progress in increasing access to services to all young people and those most at risk (Dick et al., 2006).

A recent review of 16 evaluation studies on the provision of health services to young people in developing countries, 12 of which were in

Africa and one in SA, reported that a combination of strategies are used to improve access to health care (Dick et al., 2006). These include:

- Improving the knowledge and skills of service providers;
- Making facilities responsive to the need of adolescents by changing opening times and improving the physical environment;
- Reaching out from health facilities into the community to provide information;
- Generating demand for services in the community and creating community support for health services;
- Involving other sectors such as schools and the media; and
- Providing information and mobilising the community.

Evaluation of the effectiveness of the studies was limited by the range and poor choice of evaluation methods, incomplete description of interventions, variation in the scale of evaluation (10 studies involving fewer than 10 clinics, and the remainder varying from 15 clinics to 328 clinics) and in the duration and intensity of interventions. While most studies focused on improving existing services within public health facilities, 11 of the 16 studies were multi-component interventions involving other sectors. Half of the studies used peer educators, some based in clinics and others in the community, to generate demand, refer young people to health services, ensure that health services were welcoming and provide information about sexual and reproductive health services. Despite the limitations of the data, there is sufficient evidence to promote the wide-scale implementation of programmes that seek to train service providers and other clinic staff and improve the conditions of the facility, supported by efforts to inform and generate demand for services among community members (Dick et al., 2006). These interventions will require careful monitoring of their coverage and quality.

loveLife has been instrumental in introducing and disseminating the concept of youth-friendly clinics through the National Adolescent-Friendly Clinic Initiative (NAFCI). NAFCI is a collaborative project between loveLife, the Reproductive Health Research Unit and the Department of Health. Together they have established national standards for public health clinics to be accredited as adolescent-friendly. These include a practical, self-assessment audit and an external assessment. The objectives of the programme are to improve the accessibility and acceptability of public health services by adolescents and to build the capacity of health workers to provide quality care to young people (Dickson-Tetteh, Pettifor & Moleko, 2001). A key part of the NAFCI service is peer outreach that encourages young people to use health care services. This outreach is provided by groundBREAKERS who are trained peer educators located at each clinic with the purpose of promoting positive lifestyles and healthy sexuality.

Three studies evaluating the effectiveness of adolescent-friendly services in SA showed mixed results. The first evaluation, included in the WHO Study (see Dick et al., 2006) reviewed 32 clinics participating in the national programme between 2002 and 2004. The evaluation reported significant increases in service utilisation by young people as well as increases in voluntary counselling and testing. However, visits to the clinic for STI treatment, pregnancy or contraception did not increase over the time period. It must be noted that the weight that can be assigned to the evaluation is limited because of the failure to include control clinics in the evaluation.

A second study that compared NAFCI clinics to control clinics showed that NAFCI accredited clinics performed better in providing adolescent-friendly services with respect to determining adolescent needs in a community, knowledge of adolescent rights, availability of adolescent specific information and non-judgemental attitude of staff (Dickson, Ashton & Smith, 2007). However, overall quality of care was not significantly different from control clinics.

Similarly, a third study using adolescent-simulated requests for HIV testing from NAFCI and regular clinics showed that NAFCI clinics performed better on only one indicator – namely accessibility of HIV testing (Matthews et al., 2009). Young people visiting NAFCI clinics were less likely to be turned away without a test. However, NAFCI clinics did not increase the acceptability of services as measured by the attitude of health staff towards youth, and respect for confidentiality, nor did it improve the appropriateness of counselling services offered to young people.

In line with problems experienced in the school setting, implementation may be compromised by the physical constraints of the clinic setting as well as the work culture adopted in clinics that are more task-oriented rather than holistic in approach (Rohleder & Swartz, 2005) and therefore not conducive to the provision of adolescent-friendly services. Although there is global consensus on the need for adolescent-friendly health services, much more rigorous evaluation studies are required at a global and local level to demonstrate their effectiveness in improving access to health services and, particularly, in improving health outcomes (Tylee et al., 2007).

#### **Termination of pregnancy services**

Early in the transition to democracy, SA promulgated the Choice of Termination of Pregnancy Act (Act No.92 of 1996) to reduce abortion-related morbidity and mortality and to protect women's reproductive health choices as well as their right to access safe reproductive health care services. Available data suggests that the Act has had a positive impact on both morbidity and mortality. Comparing abortion-related mortality between 1994 and 1998-2001, Jewkes and Rees (2005) reported a 91 percent reduction in deaths from unsafe abortion. More recent reports of the Confidential Enquiries into Maternal Deaths also show a decline in abortion-related deaths. Whereas abortion accounted for 5.7 percent of maternal deaths in 1998, it dropped to 3.5 percent in the 2002-2004 report (DOH, 2006). The expected dramatic decline in abortion-related morbidity, however, has not manifest in SA. Comparison of incomplete abortion between 1994 and 2000 show no statistical evidence of change (Jewkes et al., 2005). However, there has been a significant reduction in unsafe abortion among teenagers. While the 1994 study showed that teenagers were most at risk for unsafe abortion with one fifth in the high-severity category, by 2000, they were more likely to be in the low-severity category.

Most young women are able to balance the moral, cultural and religious ideology about early pregnancy and termination with the pragmatics of early motherhood (Varga, 2002). So they do seek termination. But the stigma of the community and the health care system, as well as the influence of important decision-makers in their lives (mothers, older women in the family and partners) prevents them from choosing safe reproductive health options available to them (Jewkes et al., 2005). They opt for backstreet abortions rather than legal and safe abortions. Much like HIV, concerted community-level efforts are required to shift social norms about pregnancy and termination, and to empower young

women and their families using a rights-based framework to balance provision of sub-optimal health care services with demand for services that are of appropriate quality.

#### **Mass media campaigns**

Mass media is an appealing strategy to influence young people's sexual and reproductive health because of its ability to reach large numbers of young people (NRC & IOM, 2005). Given the appeal and allure of mass media to young people, it has been used extensively to change knowledge, attitudes and behaviour regarding HIV and AIDS (Bertrand & Anhang, 2006). But mass media communication is often difficult to evaluate because of its national scale, precluding the use of randomised control trials, the difficulty of attributing effects to the media component when such interventions are often multi-component programmes, and separating the effects of a particular intervention, in an environment in which multiple interventions or campaigns are taking place (Bertrand & Anhang, 2006; Shisana et al., 2005). Communication interventions use a wide spectrum of media including radio, television, video, print, and the Internet, and these can take a variety of forms including talk shows, public service announcements, soap operas, billboards, pamphlets, posters and interactive websites (Bertrand & Anhang, 2006).

A recent review of mass media interventions focused on changing HIV-related behaviour among youth in developing countries, synthesised the effectiveness of 15 evaluation studies – 11 from Africa and three from SA, in order to make recommendations for the wide-scale implementation of such interventions (Bertrand & Anhang, 2006). The evaluation studies were classified into three categories: radio only, radio with supporting media such as print, videos, theatre and school workshops, and radio and television with supporting media. Review of these studies show that mass media interventions are able to impact on one or more sexual behaviour and psychosocial factors influencing behaviour. Interventions showed positive effects on knowledge, self-efficacy to use condoms and actual condom use, some shifts in social norms, increased interpersonal communication and greater awareness of health services. However, the programmes reviewed did not improve abstinence-related self-efficacy, delay age at sexual debut or decrease multiple partners. While there was little evidence to support radio-only interventions, there was little that separated radio with supporting media versus radio and television with supporting media in terms of effects on multiple outcomes. Studies that measured dose-response effects showed that young people who had high exposure to the campaign via multiple channels were more likely to change behaviour. Although costs and use of a particular media channel may determine the mix of media used, the review concluded that there was sufficient evidence to recommend the wide-scale implementation of mass media campaigns that use multiple media channels and that are closely co-ordinated to other interventions such as school-based or clinic-based interventions.

However, given the high cost of media interventions, many more rigorous evaluation studies are required on large-scale comprehensive communication interventions to demonstrate their effects at a population level and to determine their costs (Bertrand & Anhang, 2006). As randomised control trials cannot be used to evaluate national interventions, a recommendation is made for the use of quasi-experimental designs together with analytic approaches to infer causality.

SA has launched several national mass media campaigns in response to the HIV and AIDS epidemic. These have included radio, television, print and outdoor media supported by more localised activities such as workshops, participation in clubs and access to services. While most of these interventions do not target teenage pregnancy explicitly as an outcome, they do confer benefit because of their focus on sexual behaviour and practices common to both pregnancy and HIV. In addition, over and above mass campaigns, several more localised forms of social communication around HIV and AIDS also provide information, and influence behaviour and practice (see Table 18). Herein lies the difficulty of evaluating effects of mass media campaigns. While evaluation of media campaigns focuses on single interventions, they seldom take into account the multiple sources of information from a range of interventions (Shisana et al., 2005).

**Table 17: Sources of information related to HIV and AIDS for young people in SA**

SOURCE	TYPE OF ACTIVITY
<b>National multimedia campaigns</b> Khomanani loveLife Soul City Soul Buddyz	National multi-media HIV and AIDS campaigns and programmes including communication via mass media (television, radio, print, outdoor media) and including interactive participation
<b>Television series</b> Tsha Tsha Gazlam Beat It	National HIV and AIDS-focused television series broadcast nationally on prime time
<b>Non-campaign related mass media</b>	News features, documentaries, talk-shows, statistics etc. with HIV and AIDS content broadcast and published nationally and internationally
<b>School-based life-skills</b>	National life-skills education programmes including HIV and AIDS interactive participation
<b>Provincial campaigns</b> Local campaigns Health systems, clinics, hospitals Local organisations focused on HIV Faith-based organisations	HIV and AIDS communication via mass media and including international participation
<b>Direct experience of HIV and AIDS</b>	This includes personally knowing people who are positive, knowing those who have died; interaction with friends and relatives about HIV and AIDS; being orphaned as a result of AIDS etc.

Source: Parker & Colvin, 2006

Nevertheless, data is available on the reach of national media campaigns, and their perceived usefulness, as well as estimations of their impact.

The evaluation will focus on three of the largest national campaigns, loveLife, Soul City and Khomanani. The focus of each of these campaigns is outlined below.

**Box 1: Description of three national HIV and AIDS campaigns in SA**

**KHOMANANI**

Khomanani was launched in 2001 as a government HIV and AIDS communication brand that operated for two years. It was re-launched in 2007 by the Department of Health with the aim of halving the incidence of HIV infections by 2011 and mitigating the impact of AIDS on individuals, families and communities. The campaign focuses on accelerated HIV and AIDS prevention; care, treatment and support; nutrition, health promotion and TB.

The programme targets youth of school going-age. It seeks to mobilise individuals to participate in caring communities that together take on the challenges posed by STIs, HIV and AIDS and TB (GCIS, 2003). It encourages young people to delay sex and for those who are sexually active, to adopt safe sexual practices (Cullinan, 2002). The programmes also focuses on the risks of transactional sex. It distributes its message via TV and radio commercials, public service announcements, print media and community outreach programmes (SAGI, 2005). Khomanani is guided by the HIV and AIDS and STIs Strategic Plan for South Africa. It uses a behavioral change framework that seeks to foster changes in sexual behaviour through a five-step process of knowledge, approval, intention, practice and advocacy (GCIS, 2003).

**SOUL CITY**

Soul City is the longest-running HIV and AIDS awareness and prevention programme in SA. It was established as an NGO in 1992 and targets teenagers and adults as well as children aged 8-12 through its two main brands, Soul City and Soul Buddyz respectively. Soul City uses its edutainment model to inform programming. Edutainment integrates social issues into accessible, popular and high-quality entertainment formats, based on a thorough research process (Soul City 2009a). Although its main medium is TV and radio drama, it also uses community radio talk shows, TV and radio commercials, print media and as well as outreach events such as community dialogues to spread its message (oneLove, 2008). While the main thrust of Soul City is on HIV and AIDS and sexual behaviour, it also seeks to improve people's health and quality of life in general by addressing issues such as gender-based violence, substance abuse and small business development (Soul City, 2009a).

Integral to Soul City's approach towards programming is extensive consultation with both civil society as well as experts in the field (Soul City, 2009b). Soul City combines a number of intervention models and theories that focus beyond individual behaviour. Soul City submits to WHO's Ottawa Charter that theorises that an individual's health is affected by a range of cross-cutting factors. This involves integrating the creation of an enabling environment with public health policy, community action, developing personal skills and health promotion. Behaviour change theories such as Bandura's Social Learning theory (Bandura, 1986) and Johns Hopkins University's model of Steps to Behaviour Change also inform Soul City's mass media programming.

## LOVELIFE

loveLife was launched in 1999 as a major South African national HIV prevention programme targeting youth aged 12-17 (loveLife, 2009). It works with approximately 130 community-based organisations, several non-governmental organisations and government. loveLife developed a strong youth development brand that young people can identify with. The brand was used to raise discussions about sex and expose the link between sex and HIV and AIDS (Harrison, 2008a). The main goal of loveLife is to reverse the HIV epidemic among young people, while concomitantly addressing teenage pregnancy and other sexually transmitted infections (loveLife, 2009). It also seeks to address issues such as sexual coercion, imbalanced gender roles, and encourages family discussions about sex. loveLife's theoretical framework of behaviour change is informed by behavioural theories such as diffusion of innovations, ecological theory and the theory of reasoned action (Ajzen and Fishbein, 1980; Rogers, 2003; Waldo and Coates, 2000). It focuses on creating change through social networks, opinion leaders and change agents (Pettifor et al., 2007).

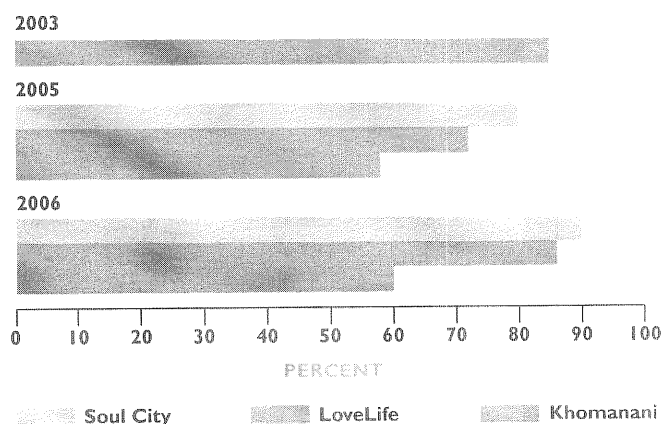
loveLife uses the combination of mass media and community outreach programmes to encourage community participation which will, in turn, engender positive living (Harrison, 2008). Mass media approaches include TV and radio commercials, talk shows, outdoor media, print media and face-to-face services provided in the 11 official languages of the country. It also runs a helpline for both youth (thethajunction) and parents to access sexual health information. loveLife re-packages its message through community-level campaigns that makes use of mentors and peer educators. About 1 200 national corps (groundBREAKERS) aged 18-25 years and 5000 volunteer peer motivators ('impintshis') lead loveLife's HIV prevention education and youth mobilization programme into communities including about 4 200 schools.

To strengthen its community outreach arm, loveLife also provides youth-friendly service in collaboration with about 350 government clinics nationally. It has also established 17 non-clinical youth centres known as Y-centres throughout the country. These centres are inter-sectoral in that they provide youth with sexual health education, and accessible adolescent health services in a non-clinical environment as well as other opportunities for youth development such as computer training and recreational activities.

In collaboration with the Department of Sport and Recreation, loveLife conducts the loveLife Games - an inter-school sport and lifestyle development initiative, which attracts over 250 000 learners and about 2 000 teachers annually (loveLife, 2009). The Games promote HIV prevention and health living, self-motivation and personal achievement (Harrison, 2008). In addition, loveLife has trained a network of 500 grandmothers - known as goGetters, to assist with HIV prevention among 6 000 orphaned and vulnerable children. Programme focal areas include assisting orphans to stay in school and gain access to government support services such as social grants, preventing sexual abuse, and maintaining their general well-being (loveLife, 2009).

There are relatively high levels of knowledge of all three programmes among 15-24 year olds, although Khomanani lags behind (See Figure 15). To achieve high-frequency- and high-intensity- media coverage, however, awareness should be around the 80 percent mark (Harrison, 2008a). Both Soul City and loveLife have been achieving these levels of penetration over the past five years in this age group.

**Figure 13: Proportion of 15-24 year olds who know of Soul City, loveLife and Khomanani**



Source: Harrison, 2008a

Young people in SA place a great deal of trust in national HIV campaigns as a source of information. Over four fifths of youth (85%) trust national campaigns as a source of information about HIV, surpassed only by doctors/scientists (87%) (Kaiser Family Foundation & SABC, 2006). Equally- high numbers (83%) perceive national HIV campaigns to be an effective source of teaching about HIV. The 2005 SABSMM survey (Shisana et al., 2005) measured the perceived usefulness of HIV campaigns for HIV information. All three campaigns (Soul City – 95%; Khomanani – 80%; loveLife – 91%) received a high level of endorsement in terms of their perceived usefulness by young people.

While specific interventions have attempted to demonstrate their impact on behaviour, more robust assessment of impact is likely to be gauged from a cumulative effect of exposure to multi-media programmes. In 2006, the first national HIV and AIDS communication survey was undertaken in SA. Secondary analysis of the data was conducted to estimate the impact of eight national communication programmes involving 19 communication sub-components on several HIV-related outcomes (Kincaid et al., 2008). The findings suggest substantial direct effects on 13 HIV-related outcomes based on exposure to various national communication strategies, although these findings are not specified to youth. These effects are evident on, among others, condom use, self-efficacy to use condoms, communication with friends and partners about HIV testing and faithfulness to partners (see Table 19). The size of the effect varies with increasing levels of exposure to communication programmes indicated by the range of the impact in Table 19. For example, while 38 percent of participants who were not exposed to any media programmes used a condom to prevent HIV, 56 percent who were exposed to 15 or more programmes used a condom. The findings provide support for increased coverage and intensity of media programmes (Kincaid et al., 2008; Harrison, 2008a), although the upper limit of the range of impact suggests that there is a

threshold to which cumulative exposure can have an impact on behaviour. Hence media programmes, while effective in changing a range of behaviours, need to be supported by other intervention strategies.

**Table 18: Cumulative odds of behaviour change with increased exposure to communication campaigns**

	ODDS RATIO	% RANGE OF IMPACT
Used condom to prevent HIV	1.05	38-56
Self-efficacy of condom use	1.07	42-55
Talked to friend about HIV test	1.09	23-79
Talked to partner about HIV test	1.07	50-73
HIV test within last 6 months	1.06	15-30
Helped someone sick with AIDS	1.06	36-57
Helped a child affected by AIDS	1.1	6-21
Positive attitude to AIDS	1.12	2-11
Participated in meeting in which AIDS discussed	1.03	37-47
Knows AIDS telephone helpline	1.11	35-72
Faithful to partner	1.12	15-50
Abstains	NS	
One vs multiple partners	NS	
Condom with non-regular partner	NS	

Source: Kincaid et al., 2006

#### Community-based interventions

Because of the somewhat-limited benefits of single interventions in discrete settings, and the increased recognition of multiple sources of risk and protective factors over the past two decades, there has been an increased recognition of the need to focus on multi-component community-based activities as a support to institutional interventions (Kirby, 2007; NRC & IOM, 2005). These use various combinations of school and health-based interventions, community awareness raising including media type interventions and, in some cases, working with youth organisations. A review of six community-wide interventions in the US showed mixed results. Kirby (2007) indicated that firm conclusions could not be drawn because of the generally weaker design of community interventions. While the fear that community-based interventions will increase sexual activity has not manifest, there were positive indications from four studies that such interventions can delay initiation of sex, increase condom use and lower pregnancy or birth rates at a community-wide level.

An evaluation of 22 community-based interventions focusing on young people in developing countries also indicated that the lack of rigour in the evaluation of interventions severely constrained the conclusions that could be reached (Maticka-Tyndale & Brouillard-Coyle, 2006). In this review, 4 types of community-based programmes were reviewed:

- Programmes targeting youth that were delivered through youth organisations or youth centres;
- Programmes targeting youth that built specific infrastructure for the interventions;
- Programmes targeting community members in general and delivered through support networks; and

- Programmes targeting whole communities delivered through community-wide events.

Interventions were designed to increase knowledge related to HIV, build skills such as condom use self-efficacy, change sexual behaviour as well as raise awareness and shift community norms. None of the studies reviewed produced strong evidence of positive effects on behaviour. Most studies produced mixed results and many were too poorly designed to reach conclusions about their effects. The strongest evidence for positive effects on knowledge, skills, age of sexual debut or condom use came from 10 studies that targeted youth through youth organisations. However, no effects were reported on the incidence or frequency of sexual activity or on multiple partnerships. While the review recommends delivery of such interventions at scale, it cautions that they need to be supported by rigorous monitoring of operational processes and evaluation of impact. Most of the interventions using this design were delivered by peer educators. To ensure the successful application of this delivery format, the review recommends using established criteria to recruit peer educators and providing training and ongoing monitoring and support throughout the programme. The weak design, limited number and short evaluation period of the other modalities, limit recommendations about their wide-scale implementation, although there is some evidence of their positive effects.

Participation in community-level activities is generally low among young people in SA. The 2005 SABSMM survey (Shisana et al., 2005) showed that while a quarter (25.7%) of adults aged 25-49 participated in community meetings, only about a sixth (16%) of youth aged 15-24 attended such meetings. Although loveLife is often identified by its prominent multimedia interventions, it has an equally strong community-level presence, described in Box 1 above. However, only about a third (34%) of young people who participated in the 2003 RHRU survey reported participation in loveLife's community-based activities (Pettifor et al., 2004). Although community-based activities focused on HIV are not perceived by young people to be as effective as teachings learnt from health workers or via national campaigns (SABC & Kaiser Foundation, 2006), analysis of cross-sectional data shows that participation in loveLife activities significantly reduces the odds of being HIV-positive among both males (0.6) and females (0.61). The analysis controlled for a number of factors including awareness of two different national HIV prevention campaigns (Pettifor et al., 2005). While cross-sectional data can never prove attribution (Harrison, 2008a) and analyses have not taken into account the effects of exposure to multiple HIV and AIDS programmes taking place in SA (Jewkes, 2006; Parker & Colvin, 2006), the analysis does provide some indication of the impact of loveLife on HIV risk. In addition, participation in loveLife programmes has also been associated with greater self-motivation, more interpersonal communication about HIV, high condom use and greater likelihood of testing (Harrison, 2008a).

A randomised control trial that tested the Stepping Stones intervention in rural Eastern Cape among youth aged 15-26 showed mixed results (Jewkes et al., 2008). Stepping Stones is a community-based HIV prevention programme – run by the Planned Parenthood Association that aims to build gender equitable relationships by drawing on everyday experiences to discuss sex and love, conception and contraception, unwanted pregnancy, sexually transmitted infections, motivation for sexual behaviour, dealing with grief and loss, and communications skills. While the programme did not have an impact

on HIV incidence, it did reduce the incidence of Herpes Simplex Type 2. However, unwanted pregnancy seemed to have increased in the intervention arm at the 12-month and 24-month follow-up periods. While behaviour change was not evident among women in the intervention, men reported lower levels of transactional sex at 12 months and perpetration of intimate partner violence at the 12- and 24-month follow-up periods.

Expanding participation in community-based interventions represents a potential area of growth in responding to adolescent sexual and reproductive health in SA although more rigorous evaluation studies are required to demonstrate their efficacy. This is especially important for young people who exit the schooling system prematurely and who are at increased risk for early pregnancy and HIV.

#### *Youth development programmes*

As discussed earlier, when young people perform well at school, are connected to the school, their families and other institutions in the community, and have definitive plans for the future, they are less likely to fall pregnant (Kirby, 2007). Given the number of non-sexual factors that influence sexual behaviour, numerous youth development programmes that focus on the whole person have been trialled in the US to influence adolescent reproductive health. While some modalities show positive results, others show no effects. In addition, the few evaluation studies limit firm conclusions about the effectiveness of youth development programmes as a whole. One modality that shows promise is service learning involving community service that is either voluntary or linked to an academic programme. Four studies, three of which were conducted in multiple locations in the US, have shown consistently positive effects on sexual activity or teenage pregnancy even when programmes did not address sexuality directly (Kirby, 2007). Although the precise reasons for the effect of service learning on sexual behaviour have not been identified, a number of mechanisms have been postulated. These include developing strong bonds with programme facilitators, increased competency in relationships with peers and adults, developing a sense of purpose about the future, making a difference in someone's life; and engaging in a time-intensive programme (average of 44-77 hours in a year) thus reducing the time available for engaging in risk behaviour.

Vocational education and employment programmes that provide academic remediation and life skills education, however, did not have an impact on pregnancy or birth rates (Kirby, 2007). Three other comprehensive and intensive youth development programmes that focused on improving academic achievement and social competence, school attachment and parenting skills respectively, showed consistently positive effects although the number of evaluation studies was too small to draw firm conclusions.

Although a number of youth development programmes are provided, particularly for vulnerable groups in developing countries, evaluation studies are rare (NRC & IOM, 2005; World Bank, 2006). Both the 2007 World Development Report (World Bank, 2006) and the Panel on Transitions to Adulthood in Developing Countries (NRC & IOM, 2005) make reference to the Better Life Options Programme in India targeted at young women aged 12-20 who are out of school and who reside in rural areas or peri-urban slums. The programme provides non-formal education with links to formal education, vocational skills, health education, access to reproductive health services and empowerment

of women through public awareness and advocacy. Evaluation of the programme effects showed that girls participating in the programme were more likely to delay marriage, have fewer children, use contraception, participate in formal schooling, be employed and make use of antenatal care and hospital services for deliveries (NRC & IOM, 2005; World Bank, 2006).

Given that incomplete schooling is a significant risk factor for both pregnancy and HIV, instituting interventions that promote schooling may be an effective method to prevent pregnancy and HIV. Because of the trade-offs between child labour and education, conditional cash transfers have been used in Mexico to increase participation in education, health and nutrition programmes (IFPRI, 2002). The PROGRESA Program provided a food- and educational- grant to poor rural families conditional on their children attending school regularly and receiving periodic medical checkups. The programme produced a proportional increase in enrolment at secondary school level of about 8 percent for boys and 14 percent for girls (Schultz, 2000). It also ensured that students entered school at earlier ages, decreased grade repetition and improved grade progression. The programme was particularly effective in decreasing dropout between the transition from primary to secondary school (IFPRI, 2002). It also promoted re-entry into school among students who dropped out prior to the initiation of the programme, although subsequent dropout among these students was high. Although PROGRESA did not explicitly focus on reproductive health outcomes, given the well-established benefits that schooling confers to reproductive health, it does offer a promising approach to delay pregnancy and protect against HIV.

Financial concerns are the chief reason cited by most young people in SA for not continuing their education (Richter et al., 2005; Stats SA, 2008b). Yet when children, and particularly, young women, live in households that receive social grants, they are more likely to attend school (Samson et al., 2004). Failure to complete school, as opposed to high-risk sexual behaviour, has been identified as a significant risk factor for HIV among young women in SA (Pettifor et al., 2008). In light of these findings and the success of conditional cash transfers in other settings, the Reproductive Health Research Unit is in the process of testing such a programme to retain girls in school in SA. Such an intervention may also confer benefit to teenage pregnancy but would need to be a distinct outcome measure of the trial.

## **SECOND CHANCE PROGRAMMES**

When young people's transition to education and work is interrupted by early parenthood, especially under poverty-stricken circumstances, institutional-level support is required to mitigate educational, economic, health and child care barriers (World Bank, 2006).

#### *Flexible school policies*

One of the most cost effective interventions that countries can introduce is *flexible school policies*. In fact, increasing access to second chance programmes such as high school equivalence programmes in the US has allowed teenage mothers to continue their education thereby limiting the impact of pregnancy on a range of outcomes (World Bank, 2006). More progressive policies adopted in sub-Saharan Africa and Latin America post-2000 means that many more young women can stay in school and complete their education (World Bank,



2006). While some countries allow young women to remain in school during pregnancy, others require them to take a leave of absence for a specified period, after which they may re-enter school (NRC & IOM, 2005). However the extent to which policies are actually implemented are unknown and the effects of such policies are yet to be evaluated (NRC & IOM, 2005).

SA is one of several countries in sub-Saharan Africa that has taken steps to protect young mothers' right to education. Even before the transition to democracy, in the absence of a formal policy, schools allowed pregnant girls to remain in school and to return to school post delivery. The introduction of the Constitution in 1996 together with the Education Act and Schools Act in the same year formalised this practice. In July 2000, the Council of Education Ministers pronounced specifically on teenage pregnancy, indicating that pregnant learners could not be expelled from school. Yet this practice persists. Anecdotal reports through the media as recent as 2008, indicate that girls continue to be expelled when they become pregnant ('Pregnant pupils expelled', *The Mercury*, May 8 2008).

In 2007, the Department of Education, motivated by a concern for learner pregnancies in public schools, introduced guidelines for the prevention and management of learner pregnancy (DOE, 2007a). The guidelines recognise the responsibility and influence that the education system shares with the larger community to prevent and manage teenage pregnancy. It emphasises a prevention focus to reduce teenage pregnancy, HIV and other sexually transmitted infections. This goal can be achieved through sex education provided by the Life Orientation learning area, HIV and AIDS programmes and peer education among learners. However, the guidelines recognise that unplanned pregnancies do occur and that the education system requires policies and procedures to manage these events appropriately. The guidelines attempt to balance the right of the pregnant teenager to education and equality against the rights of the newborn child to care and support. Three potential areas of concern arise in the guidelines:

- 1) The strong focus on abstinence messaging;
- 2) The suggestion that pregnant learners exit the schooling system for a period of up to two years in the interest of pre- and postnatal care as well as parenting responsibilities; and
- 3) The association of teenage pregnancy with poor morality and being contrary to the value system of some community members.

When abstinence is promoted as a behavioural choice within the ambit of a comprehensive programme on sexuality that includes information on contraception, it can delay sexual debut (Kirby, 2008). However, a systematic review in the US found little scientific evidence that abstinence-only programmes delay initiation of sexual intercourse. In fact the lack of scientific rigour of abstinence-only programmes compromises the ability to evaluate their effectiveness. A recent review of abstinence-only education in the US (Santelli et al., 2006) reported that many teens who express interest in abstaining fail to do so and when they do initiate sex, they often fail to use contraception. In addition, a substantive proportion of school-going learners require information on contraception and reproductive health services because they are sexually active. The 2002 Youth Risk Behaviour Survey in SA reported that at least a third of adolescents in schools are sexually active (Reddy et al., 2003). To prevent pregnancy, STIs and HIV, sexually-active learners have the right to access complete and accurate

information about contraception and reproductive health services, none of which can be provided in abstinence-only programmes (Santelli et al., 2006). Comprehensive sexuality programmes on the other hand, have consistently demonstrated the ability to delay sexual debut, to reduce frequency of sex, to reduce the number of sexual partners and to increase condom and contraceptive use (Kirby, 2008). A mixed approach is therefore required, driven by the developmental stage of adolescents. For most children who have not initiated sex, abstinence-only messages are appropriate but at the cusp of puberty when the chances of sexual initiation increases, both abstinence and responsible sexuality need to be promoted (Kirby, 2007).

The two-year waiting period suggested in the DOE guidelines may compromise the educational attainment of young mothers. As discussed earlier, data from the KZN Transitions Study showed that for every year that passes after pregnancy-related school dropout, young women are significantly less likely to return to school (Grant & Hallman, 2006). Even if the recommendation is motivated by the interest of the child in the short-term, in the medium to long-term the child's interests are better served by an educated mother, as maternal education has been identified as an important determinant of a range of child outcomes including child school enrolment and education attainment (NRC & IOM, 2005). Hence, facilitating the early re-entry of young mothers into the schooling system – whether mainstream or otherwise, may be protective of their and their children's educational, health, economic and social outcomes.

Sexual experimentation is a normal part of the course of development of all adolescents. When it occurs in the context of comprehensive sex education, initiation of sex can be delayed (Kirby, 2007). However, if adolescents choose to have consensual sex and are educated to use appropriate protection, there is little evidence that it is harmful (Santelli et al., 2006). The association of teenage sexuality or pregnancy with poor morality is an individualised, victim-blaming and stigmatising approach. What this review has attempted to demonstrate is that teenage pregnancy is seldom the result of individual sexual permissiveness. Rather it emanates from a complex interplay of risk factors that stack overlapping and cumulative levels of disadvantage among some teenagers. By giving recognition to the multiple sources of influence of teenage pregnancy, many well beyond the control of adolescents, the education system can play a significant role in debunking the myth of sexual permissiveness among teenagers and in destigmatising teenage pregnancy.

As in most other countries that have developed flexible school policies, policy effectiveness is limited by the extent to which it is consistently implemented. In particular, the core constituency – young men and women, need to be made aware of their right to education to enable them to demand access where it is denied. In addition, much advocacy work will need to be done to ensure that the gatekeepers of education – principals, teachers and fellow learners, buy into the policy to reduce the stigma that often turns young mothers away from the doors of learning. Although SA has instituted an enabling policy environment for young mothers in the school environment, it needs to be supported by a programmatic focus that addresses the barriers to learning. These include catch-up programmes with respect to the academic curriculum and, in particular, remedial education that often leads to dropout. Strong referral networks are also required with relevant government departments and other community structures that can support learners

with childcare arrangements, access to reproductive health services, child support grants and to develop appropriate parenting skills to mitigate the inter-generational transmission of early parenthood. What works best for second chance programmes

No doubt, second chance programmes are being provided in SA and other developing countries, often by community-based organisations. However, available evidence suggests that they are few (NRC & IOM, 2005), and in all likelihood are small scale and seldom evaluated. Important lessons can be learned from a number of second chance programmes that have been trialled in the US since the 1960s with the explicit goal of delaying second births. It must be noted that the scope, coverage and level of documented success of these interventions in no way match the range and scale of prevention programmes undertaken.

A recent review of 19 programmes to prevent additional births to teenage mothers in the US identified five categories of programmes, although many were considered multi-component (Klerman, 2004). Programmes offered various combinations of the following services – health services either provided directly or via referral to teenagers and in some cases to children, education including formal schooling, training for employment, developing parenting skills, and social services provided by social workers, case managers, nurses and in some cases paraprofessionals. The five categories of interventions include:

- *Community-based programmes offered in multiple sites most often by community-based organisations (4 studies):* These programmes offer various combination of interventions such as service co-ordination for employment training, development of individualised plans, peer support and role modelling by community volunteers, home visiting, parent support groups, and financial assistance conditional on pregnant teens participating in workshops designed to improve personal and parenting skills, use of family planning and preparation for education, training and employment.
- *Interventions conducted in medical settings (four studies):* These programmes generally include various combinations of prenatal and postpartum care, nutritional services, family planning, as well as reproductive health and family life education;
- *School-based interventions (three studies):* While some interventions use alternative school models for pregnant girls that provide an academic curriculum combined with pregnancy-related education as well as social and medical services, others link mainstream schooling to school-based clinic and support group services;
- *Home-visiting programmes (three studies):* These generally involve trained professionals such as nurses who visit teens at their homes initiated during pregnancy and continued for up to two years post-pregnancy. Programmes provide among others parenting education, building informal support systems and links with community services to access resources and support. An alternative model used welfare agency staff with limited experience in home visiting and imposed sanctions on cash assistance grants if teenage mothers did not comply with home visits or participation in skills programmes;
- *Contraceptive implants (two studies):* Use of contraceptive implants that avoid the use of daily dosage (as is the case with contraceptive pills) or at the sexual encounter (as is the case with condoms); and
- *Other interventions (one study):* These programmes offer financial incentives for avoiding a second birth and are supported by peer support meetings that discuss family planning as well as education and training needs.

Two additional programmes, not included in the review, focused on encouraging teenage mothers to attend and complete secondary school while a third provided housing and on-site social support to pregnant teens through second chance homes.

The review of the 19 studies produced mixed findings. Although half of the studies reviewed report positive effects on additional births, only three of these studies (two nurse home-based visits and one health-based intervention) were based on rigorous evaluation designs of randomised control trials. In addition, the size of the positive effects was mostly small and the number of subsequent births was large. Nevertheless, the evaluation studies do offer some direction for what works in comprehensive second chance programmes. These include:

- *Developing a close and ongoing relationship with the teenage mother:* The best evidence for programme efficacy comes from home-based interventions where programme personnel develop a close relationship with the teen mother beginning during pregnancy and sustained two years post-pregnancy. Even though group formats for education or counselling may be more cost-effective models of delivery, teenage mothers seem to benefit the most from more individualised, intensive interaction;
- *Programmes should be offered by personnel who have been trained and have the authority and willingness to counsel in sensitive areas such as family planning;*
- *Focus on family planning:* Although the evidence for the success of programmes focused on family planning is inconclusive, second chance programmes that do not focus on reproductive health are unlikely to be successful. As such, programmes should make explicit the detrimental effects of additional births and assist teen mothers in setting targets for future births contingent on achievement of educational, economic and familial milestones. In addition, a comprehensive approach towards contraceptive use is required. This should include provision of support to choose and consistently use a method of contraception including accompanying teenage mothers to family planning services. Teenagers also need to be made aware of the side effects of contraceptives and should be provided with necessary support to choose alternatives. In addition, dual contraceptive methods should be promoted to prevent pregnancy and STIs including HIV. Consideration should be given to long-lasting hormonal contraception such as hormonal injections; and
- *Encouraging education:* When young women return to school after first birth and complete secondary school, even if educational aspirations are low, they are more likely to delay second birth. As such countries make worthy investments when substantial resources are devoted to remove barriers to return to, and complete school. Promising methods include alternative schools that offer remedial education as well as childcare support to allow young women to engage in educational and economic activities. It must be noted that remedial education is particularly important as poor performance often leads to dropout and in many cases predates pregnancy.

#### *Child support grant*

Another effective policy instrument to reduce the impact of poverty on children, including those born to teenage mothers, is the provision of social security. In spite of the documented benefits that child support confers to the nutritional status of children as measured by height for age (Aguero, Carter and Woolard, 2006), arguments persist that the

provision of welfare to single mothers encourages dependence on the state and promotes teen and premarital fertility. This thinking is not unique to SA. In 1996, the US changed its welfare policy, placing restrictions on the conditions under which teenage and unmarried mothers could access welfare. These included that welfare could only be provided for a maximum of five years over the mother's lifetime, that the teen mother had to be enrolled in school and that she had to reside with a parent or adult caregiver. Studies that have attempted to measure the extent to which declines in teen fertility in the US could be attributed to welfare reform have produced mixed outcomes (Brindis, 2006; Garfinkel, Huang, McLanahan & Gaylin, 2003; Lopoo & DeLeire, 2006). Brindis (2006) asserts that the difficulty to establish direct causality is linked to the multiple policy interventions that were taking place at the same time. These include increasing availability of long-acting contraceptive methods, increased education about HIV and AIDS as well as a vibrant economy and stronger enforcement of child support policies that increases men's responsibility for children.

Similar concerns about social security namely, the Child Support Grant (CSG) providing a perverse incentive for young women to fall pregnant has been reported in SA. Yet available evidence suggests that SA had relatively high rates of teenage fertility before the introduction of the CSG and that teenage fertility has been declining throughout the period that the CSG has been available in SA. Controversy may have arisen due to the fact that teenage fertility has declined at a slower rate than overall fertility. This may be related to a spike in teenage fertility that predates the introduction of CSG. An examination of the determinants of teenage fertility shows that it is a complex, deeply-rooted social phenomenon. Pre-marital fertility is a well-established phenomenon among African teenagers and predates the introduction of the CSG.

Analysis of Department of Social Development data has demonstrated that the number of CSG beneficiaries has grown significantly in recent years. However, if a comparison is made between the numbers of teenagers receiving the CSG with the incidence of teenage births in the national population, uptake of the CSG by teenage mothers remains low. In October 2005, teenagers (younger than 20 years) represented 5 percent of all CSG recipients. Teenagers claiming the CSG were considerably lower than the proportion of teenage mothers (13% lower) in the South African population (mothers younger than 30 years). The CSG was introduced for younger children to provide financial support during the window period when good nutrition has the most significant effect on the development of a child (within the first three

years of a child's life). However, the majority (53%) of CSG recipients apply for the CSG when their children are much older. Reasons for the relatively late uptake are probably related to lack of knowledge about the CSG and the difficulty that caregivers experience in obtaining the required documentation.

A number of studies have been undertaken in SA to assess whether the increase in CSG has had a bearing on the level of teenage fertility. Studies include the following papers: Makiwane & Udjo (2006), a later version was released by Makiwane (2007); Woolard et al., 2005; and Goldblatt & Solange, 2005. Below is the summary of the above-mentioned papers that argue that there is no evidence that the introduction of CSG has resulted in an increase in teenage fertility:

#### **Summary of Evidence**

- Research on the CSG indicates that there has been significant growth in the number of beneficiaries in recent years;
- There is no evidence of an increase in teenage births during the period in which the CSG has been introduced (1995-2005);
- There is a low uptake of CSG by teenagers. Most beneficiaries of CSG are older women, who, in most cases become the primary caregivers of children born to teenagers;
- The CSG has been found to be an effective strategy of targeting children in poor households, as demonstrated by a significant improvement in child health and nutrition (as measured by height-for-age);
- Further analysis reveals that whereas only 5.3 percent of CSG mothers are in the 15-19 year age category, the category accounts for 18 percent of all mothers in the 2001 Census. This implies that teenage mothers are under-represented among CSG beneficiaries and thus in most cases unlikely to be deliberately becoming pregnant to claim the CSG;
- The overwhelming uptake of CSG overwhelmingly by women rather than men is consistent with the measure being perceived to be for children rather than to increase general household income;
- It is arguable that the increased uptake of the CSG is attributable to a growing awareness of its availability and active measures by government to promote uptake. The CSG reaches 93 percent of poor children whose carers/parents apply, suggesting that the grant is effective;
- Throughout the period that the CSG has been in operation, there has been an increase in the number of teenagers who undergo termination of pregnancy; and
- Uptake is relatively low in the poorest areas of South Africa because parents/caregivers lack the required documentation.

## CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

### FERTILITY

The report set out to document the prevalence and determinants of, as well as key interventions for, teenage pregnancy in SA. Although the study focused on pregnancy, the detailed trends presented in the report are on fertility. Understanding the distinction between pregnancy and fertility is essential. Fertility rates refer only to pregnancies that have resulted in live births while pregnancy rates include both live births and pregnancies that have been terminated. Before the introduction of the termination of pregnancy legislation, fertility closely approximated pregnancy rates. Since the legalisation of abortion, however, this can no longer be assumed to be the case. Trends in pregnancy rates in SA cannot be accurately estimated for two reasons. Firstly, it is not known whether pregnancies that were terminated early on are well-captured in survey data and school record systems. Secondly, a comprehensive national register of abortion is not maintained in SA.

For the purposes of this study, trends in teenage fertility were investigated in three stages: (1) Mapping the overall trends in fertility in SA; (2) Documenting trends in teenage fertility relative to overall fertility; and (3) Analysing learner pregnancies reported through the Education Management Information System. South African fertility has been on the decline over several decades. To date, SA has the lowest fertility rate in mainland sub-Saharan Africa. While teenage fertility has been declining over time, this has occurred at a slower pace than overall fertility. The slower decline in teenage fertility may be attributed to interruptions in fertility associated with national epochs. For example, the interruption of schooling during the struggle years was associated with a rise in teenage fertility. Similarly, the spike in fertility in the mid-1990s is associated with political changes during that period when there were concerns for the large cohort of young people who had become marginalised from mainstream systems of education, work, health care and family life. However, it must be noted that teenage fertility has declined by 10 percent between 1996 and 2001, following which reliable data on national fertility is not available. A further decline in fertility has been reported in the 2007 Community Survey.

Older adolescents aged 17-19 account for the bulk of teenage fertility in SA. While rates are significantly higher among African and Coloured adolescents, fertility among White and Indian adolescents approximates that of developed countries. This difference can in all likelihood be accounted for by the wide variation in the social conditions under which young people grow up, related to disruptions of family structure, inequitable access to education and health services, as well as the concentration of poverty and unemployment in African and Coloured communities. However, international research shows that even when the above factors are controlled for, differences between populations groups persist, indicative of cultural differences with regards to pregnancy.

Analysis of the EMIS data on teenage pregnancy shows an increase in learner pregnancies between 2004 and 2008. However, this trend is contrary to national trends in fertility and is more likely the result of improved reporting, rather than a real increase. Analysis of provincial trends shows a concentration of learner pregnancies in the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Limpopo. Despite the limitations of the EMIS data, it does provide some indications of the types of schools in which learner pregnancies are concentrating. Learner pregnancies are higher in schools

that are poorly resourced (lower in specialised schools), those located in poor neighbourhoods (no-fee schools and schools located on land independently owned), as well as in schools that involve considerable age mixing (combined schools). Targeted interventions may be required for combined schools and those located in the poorest neighbourhoods.

### Abortion

Despite the legalisation of abortion in SA in 1996 and the progressive increase of service availability in public and private facilities over time, few teenagers report using legal services for termination of pregnancies in both quantitative (3%) and qualitative data. Administrative data from the Department of Health, however, suggests much higher levels (30%) of usage of legal services by young women aged 15-19. These data sources need to be reconciled to establish a true estimate of use of services. Failure to use legal services is related to the ensuing lack of information about the costs of termination and the stage of gestation at which legal termination can take place, as well as the stigma of pregnancy and abortion generated in the community and replicated within the health system. Yet young people apply a 'relative morality' to abortion to circumvent both social and financial hardships and to protect their educational opportunities. So termination does take place, albeit illegally in many cases.

### DETERMINANTS

What the analysis of the trends in fertility show is that the moral panic about rising teenage pregnancy in SA is unfounded. It is one area in which policy instruments related to information dissemination (primarily related to HIV), family planning services, and expanding access to education, have been effective. In fact, with the changing socio-economic landscape in SA, positive attitudes towards early pregnancy reported in the early 1990s have shifted. Over two thirds of young women report their pregnancies as unwanted because it hobbles educational aspirations and imposes greater financial hardships in a context of high levels of poverty and unemployment. Furthermore, significant progress has been noted in dramatically increasing contraceptive use among young people; in particular, condom use.

Yet rates of teenage pregnancy remain unacceptably high. Despite high levels of knowledge about modern methods of contraception, a large cohort of young people do not use contraception and many use it inconsistently and incorrectly. What the moral panic argument does is associate teenage sexuality and failure to use contraception with deviant individual-level behaviour. Yet the literature review and secondary analysis shows that teenage fertility is, in fact, the result of a complex set of varied and inter-related factors, largely related to the social conditions under which children grow up. These factors include:

- When young people drop out of school early on, often because of economic barriers and poor school performance, they are at significantly- heightened risk for early pregnancy;
- When they grow up in residential areas where poverty is entrenched (informal areas and rural areas), they are at risk of experiencing an early pregnancy;
- When both parents, and in particular, the mother, is present in the home, risk for early pregnancy is decreased;
- When stigma about adolescent sexuality abounds, few opportunities exist for open communication about sex with parents and partners,

and access to judgement-free health services is limited. As a result, gaps in knowledge about, and access to, contraception is limited;

- When young women are involved in relationships where power is imbalanced, men decide the conditions under which sex occurs. All too often, this involves coerced or forced sex;
- When young women struggle to meet immediate material needs, they make trade-offs between health and economic security. Reciprocity of sex in exchange for material goods leads to young women remaining in dysfunctional relationships, engaging in multiple sexual partnerships and involvement with older men. Under such conditions, there are few opportunities to negotiate safe sex and the risk for pregnancy is increased.

Pervasive poverty in SA stacks these overlapping sources of risk against some young people, offering them limited information to make optimal choices and few incentives to protect themselves against pregnancy.

#### *Role of education*

Education is highly valued by young people in SA and aspirations for education are high. It is therefore not surprising that the rise in access to education since the 1970s, particularly for young women, has been met with a concomitant decline in teenage fertility. Despite the contestation as to whether teenage pregnancy is a cause of, or results from dropout, local and international studies show that both share the common antecedent of poverty and poor school performance. While pregnancy may be the endpoint most directly associated with dropout, it is often not the cause. Girls who perform poorly at school are more likely to drop out of school, experience early fertility and less likely to return to school following a pregnancy. In fact data from SA shows that *dropout often precedes pregnancy*. Incomplete education has been identified as a significant risk factor for negative reproductive health outcomes, namely, early pregnancy and HIV.

Even when girls have experienced an early pregnancy, South Africa's liberal policy that allows pregnant girls to remain in school and to return to school post-pregnancy, has protected teen mothers' educational attainment and helped delay second birth. However, only about a third of teenage mothers return to school. This may be related to uneven implementation of the school policy, poor academic performance prior to pregnancy, limited child-caring alternatives in the home, poor support from families, peers and the school environment, and the social stigma of being a teenage mother. South African data shows that the likelihood of re-entering the education system decreases when child care support is not available in the home and for every year that teen mothers remain outside of the education system.

Instituting strategies to retain girls in school by addressing both financial and school performance reasons, as well as ensuring early return post-pregnancy, may be the most effective social protection that the education system can offer to prevent and mitigate the impact of early pregnancy. When learners do drop out of school, concerted effort is required to re-enrol them in school or in alternative systems of education.

#### *Young fathers*

Despite the growing focus of research on fatherhood in SA, scant data is available, both locally and internationally, on young fatherhood. Available international research suggests that the profile of young

fathers is no different from young women – they tend to come from low-income homes, have poor school performance, low educational attainment and seldom have the financial resources to support the child and the mother. Our secondary analysis shows that premature exit from the schooling system almost doubles the odds of becoming a father early on in SA.

Qualitative research among young fathers in SA reports that much like young women, young men experience a strong emotional response on hearing about their impending fatherhood. Contrary to the perception of young women that many young fathers deny paternity, most young men in the study expressed a deep sense of responsibility for the child and a willingness to be actively involved in the child's life, motivated by the absence of their own fathers in their lives. But the acknowledged caring role of a father is overtaken by a deeply entrenched need to provide financially for the child. In a context of pervasive unemployment, few young men can fulfil this role, often leading to estrangement from the child. In addition, poor relations with the female partner and her family, together with cultural factors related to negotiation of paternity and ongoing responsibility for the child also serve as barriers to young men fulfilling their role as father.

Much more empirical research is required in SA on young fatherhood and to understand the role of culture and its impact on continued father involvement in children's lives. However, other policy options may have to be considered to ensure paternal support for children. These include gender-based interventions that extend the repertoire of fatherhood beyond 'providing' to being 'present and talking', especially in impoverished conditions where unemployment and poverty is high. In addition, consideration should be given to legal child support arrangements, much like in the US, where legislative interventions have resulted in increased levels of paternal involvement among children of teenage mothers.

## INTERVENTIONS

In keeping with the multiple spheres of influence on adolescent sexual behaviour, a number of prevention interventions have been instituted in SA. These include school-based sex education, peer education programmes, adolescent-friendly clinic initiatives, mass media interventions as well as community-level programmes. While the focus of these interventions has primarily been on preventing HIV, they have conferred benefit to teenage pregnancy because of their impact on sexual behaviour. While separate interventions for teenage pregnancy and HIV are neither desirable nor feasible, to prevent pregnancy from being overshadowed by a focus on HIV a distinct focus on teenage pregnancy is required. But the range, scale and reach, as well as the quality of implementation of programmes vary widely and have limited their impact on adolescent sexuality. In addition, the small number and lack of rigour of evaluation studies limit the conclusions that can be reached about the effectiveness of interventions. However, based on the growing body of evidence in both developed and developing countries, particularly with regards to HIV, recommendations for effective/promising approaches can be made. These need to be taken to scale to increase the reach and impact of programmes.

What is evident is that a magic bullet for teenage pregnancy does not exist. Given the multiple levels of influence on adolescent sexual behaviour, and, in turn, pregnancy, single intervention strategies by single

sectors of society will not solve teenage pregnancy. What is required is comprehensive approaches within the home, the school, the community, the health care setting and at a structural level. In addition, while each sector should act within its strength and foster linkages with other sectors, an integrated strategy is required to ensure that all sectors act towards achieving a common goal.

As all young people will confront their sexuality at some point in time, universal access to information and skills is required early on, to enable them to make informed choices. However, where conditions stack high and overlapping levels of risk among some young people, targeted and more intensive intervention strategies will be required. It is clear, and rightly so, that the proximal determinants or sexual risk factors are often targeted in programmes because they are more directly related to pregnancy and HIV and are more amenable to change. However, what the study has demonstrated is that non-sexual risk factors such as relational (family structure, gender relations) and structural factors (education, poverty) are critical determinants in SA. Yet the thrust of our interventions has been on proximal risk factors. Without interventions that target relational and structural factors, substantial declines in the rates of teenage fertility will not be achieved. Sexuality is a shared activity between two partners. It makes little sense to empower women about their sexuality without concomitant efforts to empower young men about equitable gender relations.

Although strong arguments exist for the thrust of interventions for adolescents to focus on prevention, the unabated and increasing levels of marginalisation of young people across a range of domains provide impetus for a more systematic focus on treatment, care and support. Even if we instituted the most rigorous prevention programmes, some young women will experience early pregnancy. Although remediation is costly and difficult to achieve, it far outweighs the costs to a society of lost human capital potential. No doubt, second chance programmes are being provided in SA and other developing countries, often by community-based organisations. However, available evidence suggests that they are few, and in all likelihood are small scale and seldom evaluated. A systematic and more formalised system of support is required for those who do become pregnant. Such programmes of support need to reach beyond addressing the health consequences of pregnancy to mitigating the educational, economic, educative and social challenges that young mothers and fathers face.

## RECOMMENDATIONS

Based on the assessment of the determinants of teenage pregnancy and a review of key interventions, the following recommendations are made for interventions within the education system. Recommendations are also made for interventions within other sectors with the aim of achieving a comprehensive and integrated approach to adolescent reproductive health.

### *Prevention*

#### **Sexual risk factors**

##### Universal implementation of sex education

The international evidence for the effectiveness of sex education programmes is substantial. Although the South African evaluation studies are less convincing, sex education should form a critical

component of a comprehensive strategy towards teenage pregnancy. However, a number of steps need to be taken to improve the focus, quality and level of implementation of programmes in South African schools. These include:

- Ensuring that programmes meet most of the 17 criteria identified for effective sex education programmes. These criteria focus on the process of developing the curriculum, the context of the curriculum and implementation of the curriculum;
- Including a definitive focus on pregnancy (rather than only HIV) by addressing knowledge and beliefs about contraception, conception and pregnancy and focusing on responsibilities of parenthood, knowledge and skills required for successful parenthood, together with an understanding of the importance of planning for and timing of parenthood;
- Adopting a comprehensive approach that addresses both abstinence and safe sex practices, rather than an abstinence-only focus. The focus of the programme (abstinence or safe sex) should be dependent on the stage of development/age of the learner, rather than the grade. This will ensure that learners who are older for their grade (due to high levels of repetition – a known risk factor for dropout, and, in turn pregnancy) receive developmentally appropriate messaging;
- Focusing on both the biological and social risk factors (such as gender power relations, poverty, early school dropout) that lead to early pregnancy;
- Addressing barriers to the full implementation of programmes in schools including raising the level of priority it assumes within the education system, addressing community perceptions and stigma, and improving teacher willingness and readiness to deliver the programme;
- Engaging peer educators or youth/community organisations as a support to teachers in and outside of the classroom. While the benefits of peer education may be greatest to peer educators themselves, this could make an important contribution to generating a new cadre of leaders at community level who can serve as role models for, among others, positive sexuality and equitable gender relations; and
- Setting up a number of rigorously evaluated effectiveness studies that focus on pregnancy as a distinct outcome using biological measures.

As a support to comprehensive sex education in schools, an assessment of the availability of condoms in the community should be conducted. Where community availability of condoms to young people is low, consideration should be given to making condoms available through the school system.

##### Targeted interventions for high-risk groups

A number of adolescents are at elevated risk for teenage pregnancy because of the social conditions in which they live. Markers of learners at elevated risk include those repeating grades, frequently absent from school, learners with a history of childhood sexual or physical abuse, learners who use/misuse substances and learners living under conditions of extreme poverty. An early warning system must be established such that teachers can identify learners at elevated risk and refer them to systems within the school or in the community for more individualised and intensive intervention.

Our secondary analysis of EMIS data indicates that higher rates of learner pregnancies are reported in schools located in poor neighbourhoods (measured by no-fee schools and farm schools) and

those in which age-mixing is significant (measured by combined schools), indicative of gender power imbalances. As part of a phased approach towards teenage pregnancy within the school system, interventions should be targeted at combined schools and those located in the poorest communities.

### **Non-sexual risk factors**

#### Interventions to retain girls in school

The traditional approach of health promotion within the school setting has been to focus on improving the health of learners to facilitate learning outcomes. However, given the significant protection that education can offer to health outcomes, improving both the quality and quantity of education, may confer significant benefit.

Incomplete schooling is a significant risk factor for both pregnancy and HIV in SA. Instituting interventions that promote uninterrupted schooling may be an effective method to prevent pregnancy and HIV. As financial concerns and high levels of repetition are two of the chief reasons for inordinate levels of dropout in SA, addressing the financial barriers to schooling and setting up a system for the remediation of school performance for those learners repeating grades may be effective interventions. Conditional cash transfer programmes have proven to be effective in improving school attendance in Mexico, Bangladesh, Nicaragua and Brazil. Plans are underway to test such a programme in SA with HIV as an outcome measure. Such an intervention may also confer benefit to teenage pregnancy but would need to be a distinct outcome measure of the trial.

When learners do drop out of school, a systematic process is required to re-enrol them in school or into alternative systems of education. To dramatically increase the number of young people enrolled in alternative pathways such as Further Education and Training (FET) or Adult Basic Education and Training (ABET), however, a number of gaps need to be addressed. These include ensuring that programmes are adequately resourced, provide quality education services, and are reframed as legitimate and credible systems linked to mainstream pathways (HSRC, 2007). In addition, alternative systems must offer viable exit opportunities for participants by cohering with further education and economic opportunities. Young people using alternative pathways rarely experience difficulties in only one aspect of their lives (Yohalem and Pittman, 2001). They often require support on multiple fronts. Service provision must be comprehensive and tend to development in a holistic manner. The structure of second chance programmes must also be flexible to accommodate the economic imperatives and family commitments that make young people turn to alternative systems.

#### Service learning

Service learning that involves community service that is either voluntary or linked to the school curriculum has shown positive effects on sexual activity and pregnancy in the US even when programmes have not addressed sexuality directly. Instituting such interventions may be a cost-effective youth development strategy that is in line with the goals of the second generation youth policy in SA. These include promoting community participation among school-going learners and providing much needed work experience for young people – a prerequisite for employment, while concomitantly offering protection to reproductive health outcomes.

### *Second chances*

As in most other countries that have developed flexible school policies regarding pregnancy, policy effectiveness in SA is limited by the extent to which it is consistently implemented. In particular, the core constituency – young men and women, need to be empowered about their right to education to enable them to demand access when provision is denied.

Much advocacy work is also required to ensure that the gatekeepers of education - principals, teachers and fellow learners, buy into the policy to reduce the stigma that often turns young mothers away from the doors of learning.

An enabling policy needs to be supported by a programmatic focus that addresses the barriers to learning. Chief among these is ensuring the prompt return of girls post-pregnancy into the schooling system. The suggestion of 'up to a two year waiting period' before return to school in the Department of Education learner pregnancy guidelines, may be counterproductive to both maternal and child outcomes. In addition, catch-up programmes with respect to the academic curriculum will need to be provided and, in particular, remedial education to improve school performance that often leads to dropout.

Strong referral networks are also required with relevant government departments and other community structures that can support learners with child care arrangements, access to reproductive health services, in particular access to contraception to prevent second birth, child support grants and to develop appropriate parenting skills to mitigate the intergenerational transmission of early parenthood. While a mass-based system is effective for the prevention of pregnancy, teenage mothers benefit more from intensive, individualised support. Setting up a one-on-one relationship with an educator or community organisation will assist teen mothers in negotiating the range of new economic, educational and social imperatives that they face.

### *Other sectors*

#### **Communities**

There is ample empirical evidence to show that when young people are excluded from mainstream systems such as education, they are at increased risk for high-risk behaviour. This is clearly evident in SA with regards to the link between school dropout and risk for pregnancy and HIV. While interventions are instituted to prevent recurring marginalisation from the school system, concomitant efforts are required within the community to support young people at high risk for pregnancy. But community participation among young people is very low in SA and the reach of large-scale interventions in the community such as loveLife is not optimal. Expanding participation in community-based interventions represents a potential growth area in responding to adolescent sexual and reproductive health in SA although more rigorous evaluation studies are required to demonstrate their efficacy.

In addition, given that stigma about adolescent sexuality and imbalanced gender relations are often generated at community level and replicated within homes and the health setting, instituting interventions to shift community norms may be an effective method to open up channels of communication about sex, to improve young people's access to health services and to foster equitable gender relations.

Given the inextricable link between adolescent motherhood, poverty and socio-economic disadvantage, efforts to empower young women through skills development and opportunities for developing sustainable livelihoods may assist in minimising trade-offs between health and economic security. In fact a cluster randomised trial that tested a micro-finance structural intervention on economic security, empowerment of women and intimate partner violence was able to halve the risk of physical and sexual violence after two years (Kim et al., 2007). Such interventions that create synergy between health and development goals, may offer promising approaches for pregnancy and HIV risk reduction.

### Health

Despite significant advancements at policy and programmatic levels to improve the availability and accessibility of health services to young people, usage is compromised by lack of acceptability of services. Even with the roll-out of the Adolescent Friendly Clinic Initiative in SA, young people are still confronted with the negative and stigmatising attitudes of health staff. Thus young women would rather not use contraception, delay accessing antenatal care when they are pregnant, or resort to illegal means for termination of pregnancy. Much more rigorous effort is required to roll out adolescent-friendly services and to entrench its key principles among the custodians of health care. In addition, the full range of preventative services for pregnancy should be made available and accessible to young people. In particular, emergency contraception, that is considered safe and effective, and that *does not increase sexual activity* among young people, should be deregulated to increase availability and usage.

Until the quality of health care services can be improved for young people, consideration should be given to making available health services outside of the health system. For example, mobile services are proving to be an effective means to provide voluntary counselling and testing services to young people, in particular, young men, who do not generally attend traditional health services.

### Parents

As the primary socialising agents of children, parents are a trusted source of information about sexuality for young people. Yet this represents a missed opportunity because parents lack both knowledge and skill to talk openly about sex and felt disempowered to parent their children in an environment that emphasises a rights-based culture for children. In addition, the generational knowledge gap, fuelled by the educational gap between parents and children, also contributes to their sense of disempowerment. However, family level interventions trialed in SA have shown that programmes can promote open communication between parents and children about sensitive subjects and foster strong parent-child bonds, as well as teach parents how to set and enforce rules. As a support to sex education in the school setting, consideration should be given to wide-scale implementation of such programmes.

### Mass media

Mass media campaigns in SA have played a seminal role in improving knowledge about sexual behaviour and, in particular, about HIV. Three multi-media campaigns, namely loveLife, Soul City and Khomanani have reached high levels of coverage among young people – the former two above the 80 percent mark required for high-intensity and high-frequency coverage. Evidence for the cumulative effect of a range of mass media programmes suggest that they have been effective in shifting a number of health behaviours including condom use, self-efficacy to

use condoms, communication with partners and peers about HIV testing and faithfulness to partners. While there is support for the increased coverage and intensity of media programmes, a distinct focus on teenage pregnancy is required. In addition, because of the threshold effect of exposure to media programmes, such interventions need to be supported by other intervention strategies.

## SCOPE AND COVERAGE OF RESEARCH

### Fertility

SA does not collect vital statistics on fertility, pregnancy and abortion. While trends in fertility (measures live births) can be reliably estimated from national datasets, pregnancy rates (that include abortions) cannot be reliably estimated. Trends in teenage fertility were estimated from the 1996 and 2001 census as well as the 1998 Demographic and Health Survey. However, the 2003 SADHS could not be used because of the problems with fieldwork in KwaZulu-Natal. As such, reliable national data on teenage fertility is not available post 2001. A strong recommendation is made for the annual collection of national vital statistics on fertility, pregnancy and abortion that are differentiated by age groups.

### EMIS data

The Education Management Information System collects data from schools through the annual school survey. Pregnancy is estimated using a single question: '*Number of female learners (that you are aware of) that fell pregnant over the previous academic year*'. It is not known, if the pregnancy statistics reported in the EMIS data includes pregnancies that were terminated. Our assessment of the EMIS data is that it most likely approximates fertility (i.e. live births), as pregnancies are more likely to be reported/discovered late into the gestation period, well past the period for safe termination. Clarity is required on how information on pregnancy is collected in the annual survey. To provide more nuanced information on fertility, pregnancy and termination, a range of questions should be included in the annual school survey.

To differentiate schools in which learner pregnancies concentrate, four variables that characterise schools (school fees, level of school specialisation, institutional phase and land ownership) were captured from available data on the Department of Education website. While the analyses do provide some indications of types of schools in which learner pregnancies are higher, the incompleteness of the data limit the extent to which firm conclusions can be reached. In order to provide reliable estimates of learner pregnancies, comprehensive administrative data is required that combines demographic data with academic performance, school level data as well as pregnancy-related variables.

Administrative data should include a variable that indicates the enumeration area of the school in accordance with Statistics South Africa data such that schools can be characterised by neighbourhood factors.

Setting up a longitudinal study in a number of carefully selected schools/neighbourhoods would allow for a better understanding of how teenage fertility is influenced by national epochs.

While current administrative data focuses on what happens before pregnancy, to determine the effectiveness of school policy on pregnancy, data needs to be collected on social, educational and economic



outcomes of teen mothers including dropout related to pregnancy, school completion, academic performance and second birth.

Exploratory studies are also required on the factors that facilitate and prevent teen parents from re-entering the school system. Such studies would enable the development of appropriate second chance interventions.

#### *Determinants*

A substantial body of research has been conducted on the determinants of teenage fertility in the US. Several studies are also available from the UK, Nordic countries and other countries from the EU. Similarly, teenage pregnancy received much scholarly attention in SA in the late 1980s and the 1990s. However, studies tended to be descriptive in nature, highlighting biological risks and were localised to particular geographical settings and population groups. Lack of methodological rigour, in some cases, limits the generalisability of these studies. In addition, a limited number of studies on the determinants of teenage pregnancy, particularly from the late 1990s, are available in SA. Many of these are qualitative in nature.

With the explosion of the HIV epidemic in SA in the late 1990s, the focus seems to have shifted from teenage pregnancy to HIV. National data became available on both the trends and determinants of sexual behaviour of adolescents. As unprotected sex results in both pregnancy and HIV, the review was able to draw on this larger body of literature. It is noteworthy that a distinct focus of research on teenage pregnancy has been overtaken by HIV and AIDS research.

Research on the risk factors related to teenage pregnancy has primarily been conducted among African and Coloured adolescents for whom rates are high. As such research on the determinants of teenage pregnancy is not available for the White and Indian population groups, for whom rates tend to be much lower. Important lessons can be learnt about protective factors among White and Indian population groups.

The focus of research on teenage pregnancy has been among young women. Very little data is available on the profile, determinants and experiences of young fathers. Given that sexuality is a shared experience and that many of the risks that young women face are through imbalanced gender relations, far more emphasis needs to be placed on the role of young men in teenage pregnancy. Studies need to explore the discordant views that paint young men as perpetrators and disengaged from their familial responsibilities from the perspective of young women, as opposed to the view of young men that they hold a

deep sense of responsibility for their children and want to be involved in their lives.

When risk factors are governed by cultural and socio-economic conditions, they are also time dependent and need to be reviewed regularly. SA has undergone significant socio-economic shifts since the 1990s when a large body of literature on teenage pregnancy was generated. While positive attitudes towards teenage pregnancy were linked to cultural endorsements of fertility, attitudes have shifted significantly over the past decade, strongly influenced by increasing educational and economic aspirations and opportunities. Hence regular determinants studies are required in keeping with changes in cultural and socio-economic conditions.

#### *Interventions*

Although a range of interventions have been implemented in SA to influence adolescent sexual behaviour, their focus is generally on preventing HIV rather than pregnancy. In addition, the small number of evaluation studies, and the lack of rigour with which they are conducted, limits the extent to which firm conclusions can be reached about their efficacy. Nevertheless, when combined with the larger body of literature available internationally, a number of promising approaches can be identified. However, many more rigorously evaluated efficacy- (to show that programmes work) and, in particular, effectiveness- (to show how programmes can be implemented within existing infrastructure) intervention studies are required. While pregnancy prevention programmes should not be separated from HIV programmes because of their common antecedents, caution is required to prevent pregnancy from being subsumed and, in some respects, neglected in favour of the overwhelming challenges that HIV presents to young people. Pregnancy prevention needs to be a distinct outcome of reproductive health programmes.

In addition, a distinct focus of research on second chance programmes for reproductive health is required to respond to the large cohort of young people who have, and will continue to experience unintended pregnancies.

No doubt a number of community organisations are providing a range of prevention and second chance programmes for teenage pregnancy in SA. However, without adequate documentation of the programme or evaluation of its efficacy, it is difficult to make recommendations regarding wide-scale implementation. A mapping exercise should be considered to identify the range and scope of interventions currently being provided in SA.

## REFERENCES

- Abe, J. S. & Zane, N.W. S. (1990). Psychological maladjustment among Asian and White American college students: controlling for confounds. *Journal of Counseling Psychology, 37*, 437-444.
- Abiodun, O. M. & Balogun, O. R. (2008). Sexual activity and contraceptive use among young female students of tertiary educational institutions in Ilorin, Nigeria. *Contraception, 79*, 146-149.
- Agüero, J. M., Carter, M. R. & Woolard, I. (2007). The Impact of Unconditional Cash Transfers on Nutrition: The South African Child Support Grant. (Working Paper No. 39). Brazil: International Poverty Center, United Nations Development Programme.
- Ahmed, N., Flisher, A. J., Mathews, C., Jansen, S., Mukoma, W., & Schaalma, H. (2006). Process evaluation of the teacher training for an AIDS prevention programme. *Health Education Research, 21*, 621-632.
- Ajzen, I. & Fishbein, M. (1980). *Understanding Attitudes and Predicting Social Behaviour*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall
- Albert, B. (2004). *With One Voice 2004: America's Adults and Teens Sound Off About Teen Pregnancy*. Washington, DC: National Campaign to Prevent Teen Pregnancy.
- Alcohol Concern (2002). *Alcohol and Teenage Pregnancy*. London: Alcohol Concern.
- Aldaz-Carroll, E., & Moran, R. (2001). Escaping the poverty trap in Latin America: The role of family factors. *Cuadernos de Economía, 38*, 155-190.
- Amoateng, A. Y., Heaton, T. B., & Kalule-Sabiti, I. (2007). Living Arrangements in South Africa. In A. Y. Amoateng & T. B. Heaton (Eds.), *Families and Households in Post-Apartheid South Africa: Socio-Demographic Perspectives* (pp. 43-59). Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Anon. (1991). Abortions – an emotional volcano. *Epidemiology Comments, 18*(10), 213-220.
- Antecol, H. & Bedard, K. (2007). Does single parenthood increase the probability of teenage promiscuity, substance use, and crime? *Journal of Population Economics, 20*, 55-71.
- Arai, L. (2003). Low expectations, sexual attitudes and knowledge: Explaining teenage pregnancy and fertility in English communities. Insights from qualitative research. *The Sociological Review, 51*, 199-217.
- Ashcraft, A. & Lang, K. (2006). *The Consequences of Teenage Childbearing*. (NBER Working Paper No. W12485). Cambridge, MA: NBER. Retrieved 15 April, 2009, from <http://ssrn.com/abstract=926063>
- Bandura, A. (1986). *Social Foundations of Thought and Action: A Social Cognitive Theory*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall.
- Bankole, A., Ahmed, F. H., Neema, S., Ouedraogo, C. & Konyani, S. (2007). Knowledge of correct condom use and consistency of use among adolescents in four countries in Sub-Saharan Africa. *African Journal of Reproductive Health, 11*, 198-220.
- Bastien, S., Flisher, A. J., Mathews, C. & Klepp, K. I. (2006). Peer education for adolescent reproductive health: an effective method for program delivery, a powerful empowerment strategy, or neither? In K. I. Klepp, A. J. Flisher, & S. F. Kaaya (Eds.), *Promoting Adolescent Sexual and Reproductive Health in East and Southern Africa* (p. 185-213). Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Bell, C. C., Bhana, A., Petersen, I., McKay, M. M., Gibbons, R., Bannon, W. et al. (2008). Building protective factors to offset sexually risky behaviours among black youths: a randomized control trial. *Journal of the National Medical Association, 100*.
- Berglas, N., Brindis, C. & Cohen, J. (2003). *Adolescent Pregnancy and Childbearing in California*. California: California Research Bureau.
- Bertrand, J. T. & Anhang, R. The effectiveness of mass media in changing HIV/AIDS related behaviour among young people in developing countries. In: *Preventing HIV / AIDS in young people. A Systematic Review of the Evidence from Developing Countries*. UNAIDS Inter-agency Task Team on Young People, David A. Ross, Bruce Dick and Jane Ferguson (Eds). Geneva, Switzerland, World Health Organization WHO, 2006. :205-241. (WHO Technical Report Series No. 938).
- Bhorat, H. & van der Westhuizen, C. (2008). Economic growth, poverty and inequality in South Africa: the first decade of democracy. Retrieved May 27, 2009, from [www.thepresidency.gov.za/docs/reports/15year\\_review/social/economic\\_growth.pdf](http://www.thepresidency.gov.za/docs/reports/15year_review/social/economic_growth.pdf)
- Bissell, M. (2000). Socio-economic outcomes of teen pregnancy and parenthood: A review of the literature. *The Canadian Journal of Human Sexuality, 9*, 192-204.
- Blake, S. M., Simkin, L., Ledsky, R., Perkins, C. & Calabrese, J. M. (2001). Effects of a parent-child communications intervention on young adolescents' risk for early onset of sexual intercourse. *Family Planning Perspectives, 33*, 52-61.
- Blum, R. W. & Rinehard, P. M. (1998). *Reducing the Risk: Connections that Make a Difference in the Lives of Youth*. Minneapolis, MN: Center for Adolescent Health and Development, University of Minnesota.
- Blum, R. & Nelson-Mmari, K. (2004). The health of young people in a global context. *Journal of Adolescent Health, 35*(5), 402-418.

- Blum, R. (2006). Youth in Sub-Saharan Africa. *Journal of Adolescent Health, 41*, 230-238.
- Bongaarts, J. (2002). The end of the fertility transition in the developed world. *Population and Development Review, 28*(3), 419-443.
- Botting, B., Rosato, M. & Wood, R. (1998). Teenage mothers and the health of their children. *Population Trends, 93*, 19-28.
- Boyer, D. & Fine, D. (1992). Sexual abuse as a factor in adolescent pregnancy and child maltreatment. *Family Planning Perspectives, 24*, 4-11.
- Bradley, T., Cupples, M. E. & Irvine, H. (2002). A case control study of a deprivation triangle: Teenage motherhood, poor educational achievement and unemployment. *International Journal of Adolescent Medicine and Health, 14*, 117-123.
- Bradshaw, D., Bourne, D. & Nannan, N. (2003, February). What are the leading causes of death among South African children (Policy Brief No. 3)? Cape Town: Medical Research Council.
- Branch, E. H. (2006). Growing up Disadvantaged: The Impact of the likelihood of Teenage Pregnancy. Paper to be presented at the 2006 Annual Meeting of the American Sociological Association, Montreal Canada, 2 August.
- Breheny, M., & Stephens, C. (2007). Individual responsibility and social constraint: the construction of teenage motherhood in social scientific research. *Culture, Health & Sexuality, 9*, 333-346.
- Brindis, C. D. (2006). A public health success: understanding policy changes related to teen sexual activity and pregnancy. *Annual Review Public Health, 27*, 277-295.
- Brofenbrenner, V. (1979). *The Ecology of Human Development: Experiments by Nature and Design*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press.
- Brook, D.W., Morojele, N. K., Zhang, C., & Brook, J. S. (2006). South African adolescents: pathways to risky sexual behaviour. *AIDS Education and Prevention, 18*, 259-272.
- Brook, J.S., Morojele, N.K., Brook, D.W., Zhang, C., & Whiteman M. (2006). Personal, interpersonal, and cultural predictors of stages of cigarette smoking among adolescents in Johannesburg, South Africa. *Tobacco Control, 15* (Suppl 1), 148-53.
- Bruckner, H., Martin, A. & Bearman, P. S. (2004). Ambivalence and pregnancy: Adolescents' attitudes, contraceptive use and pregnancy. *Perspectives on Sexual and Reproductive Health, 36*, 248-257.
- Budlender, D. (2007). Fifteen Year Review: Input Paper on Youth Development (Prepared for the presidency). Pretoria: CASE
- Bunting, L. & McAuley, C. (2004). Research review: teenage pregnancy and parenthood: the role of fathers. *Child and Family Social Work, 9*, 295-303.
- Caldwell, J.C. & Caldwell, P. (1993). The South African fertility decline. *Population and Development Review, 19*(2), 225-262.
- Cameron, N., Richter, L., McIntyre, J., Dhlamini, N. & Garstang, L. (1996). Progress report: Teenage Pregnancy and Birth Outcome in Soweto. Unpublished report: University of the Witwatersrand.
- Camlin, C. S. & Snow, R. C. (2008). Parental investment, club membership, and youth sexual risk behaviour in Cape Town. *Health Education & Behavior, 35*, 522-540.
- Campbell, C. & MacPhail, C. (2009). Peer education, gender and the development of critical consciousness: participatory HIV prevention by South African youth. *South African Health Review, 52*, 331-345.
- Cassell, C. (2002, February/March). Let It Shine: Promoting School Success, Life Aspirations to Prevent School-Age Parenthood (Volume 30, No. 3). Washington, DC: SIECUS
- Cater, S. & Coleman, L. (2006). 'Planned' Teenage Pregnancy: Perspectives of Young Parents from Disadvantaged Backgrounds. Bristol: Joseph Rowntree Foundation.
- Chandra, A., Martinez, G., Mosher, W. D., Abma, J., & Jones, J. (2005). Fertility, Family Planning, and Reproductive Health of U.S. Women: Data from the 2002 National Survey Of Family Growth (Rep. No. 23). Hyattsville, Maryland: National Center for Health Statistics.
- Clark, S. D., Zabin, L. S., & Hardy, J. B. (1984). Sex, contraception and parenthood: experience and attitudes among urban black young men. *Family Planning Perspectives, 16*(2), 77-82.
- Coates, T. J., Richter, L. & Caceres, C. (2008). Behaviour strategies to reduce HIV transmission: how to make them work better. *The Lancet, 372*, 669-684.
- Cocoran, J. (1999). Ecological factors associated with adolescent pregnancy: A review of literature. *Adolescence, 34*, 603-619.
- Coleman, J. (1998). Teenage parenthood. *Children and Society, 12*, 306-314.
- Coley, R. L. & Chase-Lansdale, P. (1998). Adolescent pregnancy and parenthood: recent evidence and future directions. *American Psychologist, 53*, 152-166.
- Condon, J. D. & Corkindale, C. J. (2000). Australian adolescents' attitudes and beliefs concerning pregnancy, childbirth and parenthood: The development, psychometric testing and results of a new scale. *Journal of Adolescence, 24*, 729-742.

- Cox, M. F. (2007). Maternal demandingness and responsiveness as predictors of adolescent abstinence. *Journal of Pediatric Nursing*, 22, 197-205.
- Cullinan, K. (2002). Govt mobilises goodwill for AIDS orphans. Retrieved from <http://www.csa.za.org/article/articleview/138/>
- Dangal, G. (2006). Teenage pregnancy: complexities and challenges. *Journal of the Nepal Medical Association*, 45, 262-272.
- Darroch, J. E. & Singh, S. (1999). Why is Teenage Pregnancy Declining? The Roles of Abstinence, Sexual Activity and Contraceptive Use. (Occasional report no. 1). New York: The Alan Guttmacher Institute. Retrieved 19 May, 2009, from [http://www.guttmacher.org/pubs/or\\_teen\\_preg\\_decline.html](http://www.guttmacher.org/pubs/or_teen_preg_decline.html)
- Darroch, J., Landry, D. & Oslak, S. (1999). Age differences between sexual partners in the United States. *Family Planning Perspectives*, 31, 160-167.
- Darroch, J. E., Singh, S., & Frost, J. F. (2001). Differences in teenage pregnancy rates among five developed countries: the roles of sexual activity and contraceptive use. *Family Planning Perspectives*, 33, 244-250.
- Dawes, A., De Sas K., Kafaar, Z. & Richter, L. (2005). Survey examines attitudes towards corporal punishment. *Article*, 19(1), 1-3.
- De Villiers, F. P. R. & Kekesi, J. (2004). Social interaction of teenage mothers during and after their pregnancy. *South African Family Practice*, 46, 21-24.
- Dearden, K., Hale, C. B., & Woolley, T. (1995). The antecedents of teen fatherhood: a retrospective case-control study of Great British youth. *American Journal of Public Health*, 85, 551-554.
- De Bellis, M. D. (2001). Developmental traumatology: The psychobiological development of maltreated children and its implications for research, treatment and policy. *Development and Psychopathology*, 13, 539-564.
- De Villiers, F. P. R. (2004). Social interaction of teenage mothers during and after pregnancy. *South African Family Practitioners*. 46(2), 21-24.
- Department of Education. (2007a). Measures for the Prevention and Management of Learner Pregnancy. Pretoria: Department of Education.
- Department of Education. (2007b). Ministerial Committee on Learner Retention in the South African Schooling System. Pretoria: Department of Education.
- Department of Health. (1999). Report on Confidential Enquiries into Maternal Deaths in South Africa 1998. Pretoria: Department of Health.
- Department of Health. (2001). National Contraception Policy Guidelines. Pretoria: Department of Health.
- Department of Health (2003). Second Report on Confidential Enquiries into Maternal Deaths in South Africa 1999-2001. Pretoria: Department of Health.
- Department of Health. (2006). Third Report on Confidential Enquiries into Maternal Deaths in South Africa, 2002-2004. Pretoria: Department of Health.
- Department of Health. (2008a). Department of Health Annual Report 2007/2008 (Report No. I-85). Pretoria: Department of Health.
- Department of Health. (2008b). The National HIV and Syphilis Prevalence Survey South Africa 2007. Pretoria: Department of Health.
- Department of Health, Medical Research Council & Measure DHS+. (2002). South Africa Demographic and Health Survey 1998. Full Report Pretoria: Department of Health.
- Department of Health, Medical Research Council & OrcMacro. (2007). South Africa Demographic and Health Survey 2003. Pretoria: Department of Health.
- Deutsch, C., Michel, B. & Swartz, S. (2003). Peer education as a rigorous technology for South Africa. *AIDS Bulletin*, 12(2), 8-10.
- Deutsch, C. & Swartz, S. (2002). Towards Standards of Practice for Peer Education in South Africa. Pretoria: Department of Health.
- Dick, B., Fergusson, J., Chadra-Mouli, V., Brabin, L., Chatterjee, S. & Ross, D. A. (2006). In: Preventing HIV / AIDS in young people. A systematic review of the evidence from developing countries. UNAIDS Inter-agency Task Team on Young People, edited by David A. Ross, Bruce Dick and Jane Ferguson. Geneva, Switzerland, World Health Organization: 205-241. (WHO Technical Report Series No. 938)
- Dickson-Tetteh, K., Pettifor, A., & Moleko, W. (2001). Working with public sector clinics to provide adolescent-friendly services in South Africa. *Reproductive Health Matters*, 9, 160-169.
- Dickson, K. E., Jewkes, R. K., Brown, H., Levin, J., Rees, H., & Mavuya, L. (2003). Abortion service provision in South Africa three years after liberalization of the law. *Studies in Family Planning*, 34, 277-284.
- Dickson, K. E., Ashton, J., & Smith, J. (2007). Does setting adolescent-friendly standards improve the quality of care in clinics? Evidence from South Africa. *International Journal of Quality in Health Care*, 19, 80-89.
- Dinkelmann, T., Lam, D., & Leibbrandt, M. (2008). Linking poverty and income shocks to risky sexual behaviour: evidence from a panel study of young adults in Cape Town. *South African Journal of Economics*, 76, S52-S74.
- Dittus, P. J. & Jaccard, J. (2000). Adolescents' perceptions of maternal disapproval of sex: Relationship to sexual outcomes. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 26, 268-278.

- Dogan-Ates, A. & Carrion-Basham, C. Y. (2007). Teenage pregnancy among Latinas: Examining risk and protective factors. *Hispanic Journal of Behavioural Sciences*, 29, 554-569.
- Dryburgh, H. (2003). Teenage pregnancy. *Health Reports*, 12, 1-11.
- Dye, T. D., Wojtowycz, M. A., Aubry, R. H., Quade, J., & Kilburn, H. (1997). Unintended pregnancies and breast-feeding behavior. *American Journal of Public Health*, 87, 1709-1711.
- East, P. L., Khoo, S. T. & Reyes, B. T. (2006). Risk and protective factors predictive of adolescent pregnancy: A longitudinal, prospective study. *Applied Developmental Science*, 10, 188-199.
- East, P. L. & Jacobson, L. J. (2001). The younger siblings of teenage mothers: A follow-up of their pregnancy risk. *Developmental Psychology*, 37, 254-264.
- East, P. L. & Shi, C. R. (1997). Pregnant and parenting adolescents and their younger sisters: The influence of relationship qualities for younger sister outcomes. *Journal of Developmental & Behavioural Paediatrics*, 18, 84-90.
- Eaton, L., Flisher, A. J., & Aaro, L. E. (2003). Unsafe sexual behaviour in South African youth. *Social Science and Medicine*, 56, 149-165.
- Ellis, B. J., Bates, J. E., Dodge, K. A., Fergusson, D. M., Horwood, L. J., Pettit, G. S. & Woodward, L. (2003). Does father absence place daughters at special risk for early sexual activity and teenage pregnancy? *Child Development*, 74, 801-821.
- Essau, C. A. (2004). Risk-taking behaviour among German adolescents. *Journal of Youth Studies*, 7, 499-512.
- Elstein, S. & Davis, N. (1997). *Sexual Relationships between Adult Males and Young Teen Girls: Exploring the Legal and Social Responses*. Chicago: American Bar Association.
- Falk, G., Ostlund, I., Magnuson, A., Schollin, J., & Nilsson, K. (2006). Teenage mothers- a high-risk group for new unintended pregnancies. *Contraception*, 74, 471-475
- Feldman, S. S. & Brown, N. (1993). Family influences on adolescent male sexuality: The mediational role of self-restraint. *Social Development*, 2, 15-35.
- Fergusson, D. M. & Woodward, L. J. (2000). Teenage pregnancy and female educational underachievement: a prospective study of a New Zealand birth cohort. *Journal of Marriage and Family*, 62, 147-161.
- Finer, L. B. & Henshaw, S. K. (2006). Disparities in rates of unintended pregnancy in the United States, 1994 and 2001. In Fischhoff, B. (1992). Risk taking: A developmental perspective. In J. F. Yates (Ed.), *Risk taking Behaviour*. (pp. 133-162). Oxford, England: Wiley.
- Flisher, A. J., Kramer, R. A., Hoven, C. W., King, R. A., Bird, H. R., Davies, M., Gould, M. S., Greenwald, S., Lahey, B. B., Regier, D. A., Schwab-Stone, M. & Shaffer, D. (2000). Risk behavior in a community sample of children and adolescent. *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry*, 39, 881-887.
- Francisco, M. A., Hicks, K., Powell, J., Styles, K., Tabor, J. L., & Hulton, L. J. (2008). The effect of childhood sexual abuse on adolescent pregnancy: an integrative research review. *Journal of Specialists in Pediatric Nursing*, 13, 237-248.
- Frost, J. J. & Oslak, S. (1999). *Teenagers' Pregnancy Intentions and Decisions: A Study of Young Women in California Choosing to Give Birth*. New York: Alan Guttmacher Institute.
- Gallais, A. (1996). Adolescents and pregnancy in Guadeloupe. *The Journal of Gynaecology, Obstetrics and Biological Reproduction*, 25, 523-527.
- Gallant, M. & Maticka-Tyndale, E. (2004). School-based HIV prevention programmes for African youth. *Social Science and Medicine*, 58, 1337-1351.
- Garenne, M., Tollman, S., & Kahn, K. (2000). Premarital fertility in rural South Africa: a challenge to existing population policy. *Studies in Family Planning*, 31, 47-54.
- Garenne, M., Tollman, S., Kahn, K., Collins, T., & Ngwenya, S. (2001). Understanding marital and premarital fertility in rural South Africa. *Journal of Southern African Studies*, 27, 277-290.
- Garenne, M. L., Tollman, S. M., Collinson, M. A., & Kahn, K. (2007). Fertility trends and net reproduction in Agincourt, rural South Africa, 1992-2004. *Scandinavian Journal of Public Health*, 35, 68-76.
- Garfinkel, I., Huang, C. C., McLanahan, S. S. & Gaylin, D. S. (2003). The role of child support enforcement and welfare in non-marital childbearing. *Journal of Population Economy*, 16, 55-70
- Goldblatt, B. & Solange, R. (2005). *Implementation of the Child Support Grant: A Study of Four Provinces and Recommendations for Improved Service Delivery*. Centre for Applied Legal Studies, University of Witwatersrand Children's Institute & University of Cape Town.
- Gordon, C. P. (1996). Adolescent decision making: A broadly based theory and its application to the prevention of early pregnancy. *Adolescence*, 31, 561-584.
- Gouws, N. (1987) "The demography of whites prior to 1820". *Southern African Journal of Demography*, 1 (1).

Govender, P (2007). Maternity leave for SA's pregnant pupils. *The Times*.

Government Communication Information System. (2003). Update on the National HIV and AIDS programme. Retrieved , May 20, 2009, from <http://www.gcis.gov.za/media/cabinet/2003/hiv.htm>

Grant, K., Grace, P., Trujillo, J., Halpert, J., Kessler-Cordeiro, A., Razzino, B & Davis, T. (2002). Predicting desire for a child among low-income urban adolescent girls: interpersonal processes in the context of poverty. *The Journal of Primary Prevention*, 22, 341-359.

Grant, M. & Hallman, K. (2006). Pregnancy-related school dropout and prior school performance in KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. *Studies in Family Planning*, 39(4), 369-382.

Gray, R, Li, X, Kigozi, G, Serwadda, D, Brahmabhatt, H, Wabwire-Mangen, F, Nalugoda, F, Kiddugavu, M, Sewankambo, N & Quinn, T. (2005). 'Increased risk of incident HIV during pregnancy in Rakai, Uganda: a prospective study', *The Lancet*, 366, 1182-1188.

Greene, K., Krcmar, M., Walters, L. H., Rubin, D. L. & Hale, J. L. (2000). Targeting adolescent risk-taking behaviors: The contributions of egocentrism and sensation seeking. *Journal of Adolescence* 23, 439-461.

Grobelaar, J. (1984). Projections and Analysis of the South African Population for the Period 1980-2015. Stellenbosch.

Hallman, K. (2004). Socioeconomic disadvantage and Unsafe Sexual Behaviours among Young Women and Men in South Africa (Rep. No. 190). New York: Population Council.

Hallman, K. (2005). Gendered socioeconomic conditions and HIV risk behaviours among young people in South Africa. *African Journal of AIDS Research*, 4, 37-50.

Hallman, K., & Grant, M. (2003). Disadvantages and youth schooling, work and childbearing in South Africa. Paper presented at the Annual Meeting of the Population Association of America, Minneapolis, 1-3 May.

Hargreaves J., Morison L., Kim J., Bonell C., Porter J., Watts C., Busza J., Pronyk P., Phetla G. (2008). The association between school attendance, HIV infection and sexual behaviour in rural South Africa. *Journal of Epidemiological Community Health*, 62, 113-119.

Harner, H. M. (2005). Childhood sexual abuse, teenage pregnancy and parenting with adult men: Exploring the relationship. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing & Mental Health Services*, 43, 20-29.

Harrison, D. (2008.) Three ways to reduce teen pregnancy in South Africa. Paper prepared for the HSRC Youth Policy Initiative Roundtable 5: Teenage Pregnancy. Reserve Bank, Pretoria.

Harrison, D. (2008). A gauge of HIV prevention in South Africa: October 2008 Sandton: loveLife. Retrieved, 25 May, 2009, from <http://www.lovelife.org.za/corporate/news/article.php?uid=1549>

Hendriksen, E. S., Pettifor, A., Lee, S., Coates, T. J., & Rees, H. V. (2007). Predictors of condom use among young adults in South Africa: the reproductive health and HIV research unit National Youth Survey. *American Journal of Public Health*, 97, 1241-1248.

Hillis, S. D., Anda, R. F., Dube, S. R., Felitti, V. J., Marchbanks, P. A. & Marks, J. S. (2004). The association between adverse childhood experiences and adolescent pregnancy, long-term psychosocial consequences, and foetal death. *Pediatrics*, 113, 320-327.

Hobcraft, J., & Kiernan, K. (2001). Childhood poverty, early motherhood and adult social exclusion. *British Journal of Sociology*, 52, 495-517.

Hobcraft, J. & Little, A. (1984). Fertility exposure analysis: A new method for assessing the contribution of proximate determinants to fertility differentials. *Population Studies*, 38(1).

Hoffman, S. (2006). By the Numbers: The Public Costs of Teen Childbearing. Washington, DC: National Campaign to Prevent Teen Pregnancy. Retrieved June 4, 2009, from

[http://www.thenationalcampaign.org/resources/pdf/pubs/BTN\\_Full.pdf](http://www.thenationalcampaign.org/resources/pdf/pubs/BTN_Full.pdf)

Hogan, D. P., Sun, R., & Cornwell, G. T. (2000). Sexual and fertility behaviors of American females aged 15-19 years: 1985, 1990, and 1995. *American Journal of Public Health*, 90(9), 1421-1425.

Hollander, D. (2003). Parents are youngster's top choice as source of health information. Perspectives on sexual and reproductive health, 34(2). Retrieved December 17, 2008, from

<http://www.guttmacher.org/pubs/journals/341102.html>

Human Sciences Research Council. (2007, November). Youth Policy Initiative Roundtable 4: Learner Retention. Reserve Bank, Pretoria.

Hutchinson, M. K., Jemmott, J. B., Jemmott, L. S., Braverman, P. & Fong, G. T. (2003). The role of mother-daughter sexual risk communication in reducing sexual risk behaviours among urban adolescent females: A prospective study. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 33, 98-107.

International Food Policy Research Institute. (2002). PROGRESA: Breaking the Cycle of Poverty. (Issue Brief). Washington, DC: International Food Policy Research Institute.

Imamura, M., Tucker, J., Hannaford, P., da Silva, M. O., Astin, M., Wyness, L. et al. (2007). Factors associated with teenage pregnancy in the European Union countries: a systematic review. *European Journal of Public Health*, 17, 630-663.

- IPAS. (2009). *Africa Alliance*. Retrieved 20 April, 2009, from [http://www.ipas.org/Countries/Africa\\_Alliance.aspx](http://www.ipas.org/Countries/Africa_Alliance.aspx)
- Jaccard, J., Dittus, P.J. & Gordon, V.V. (1996). Maternal correlates of adolescent sexual and contraceptive behavior. *Family Planning Perspectives*, 28, 159-165, 185
- Jaccard, J., P.J., Dittus, P.J. & Gordon, V.V. (2000). Parent-teen communication about premarital sex: Factors associated with the extent of communication. *Journal of Adolescent Research*, 15, 187-208.
- Jackson, E. & Harrison, A. (1999). Sexual myths around HIV/AIDS and sexuality: the gap between awareness and understanding among rural South African youth. Paper presented at the Union for African Population Studies Third African Population Conference, Durban, South Africa, 6-10 December 1999.
- James, S., Reddy, P., Ruiter, R. A. C., McCauley, A., & van den Borne, B. (2006). The impact of an HIV and AIDS life skills program on secondary school students in KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. *AIDS Education and Prevention*, 18, 281-294.
- Jewkes, R. (2006). Response to Pettifor et al. 'Young people's sexual health in South Africa': HIV prevalence and sexual behaviour from a nationally representative household survey. *AIDS*, 20(6), 949-958.
- Jewkes, R., Vundule, C., Maforah, F., & Jordaan, E. (2001). Relationship dynamics and teenage pregnancy in South Africa. *Social Science and Medicine*, 52, 733-744.
- Jewkes, R. & Rees, H. (2005). Dramatic decline in abortion mortality due to the Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act. *South African Medical Journal*, 95, 250.
- Jewkes, R., Rees, H., Dickson, K., Brown, H., & Levin, J. (2005). The impact of age on the epidemiology of incomplete abortions in South Africa after legislative change. *International Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology*, 112, 355-359.
- Jewkes, R., Gumedde, T., Westaway, M. S., Dickson, K., Brown, H., & Rees, H. (2005). Why are women still aborting outside designated facilities in metropolitan South Africa. *International Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology*, 112, 1236-1242.
- Jewkes, R., Penn-Kekana, L., & Rose-Junius, H. (2005). "If they rape me, I can't blame them": reflections on gender in the social context of child rape in South Africa and Namibia. *Social Science and Medicine*, 61, 1809-1820.
- Jewkes, R. & Christofides, N. (2008). Teenage pregnancy: Rethinking prevention. Paper prepared for the HSRC Youth Policy Initiative Roundtable 5: Teenage Pregnancy. Reserve Bank, Pretoria.
- Jewkes, R., Nduna, M., Levin, J., Jama, N., Dunkle, K., Puren, A. et al. (2008). Impact of stepping stones on incidence of HIV and HSV-2 and sexual behaviour in rural South Africa: cluster randomised controller trial. *British Medical Journal*, 337, a506.
- Kaaya, S. F., Mukoma, W., Flisher, A. J., & Klepp, K. (2002). School-based sexual health interventions in sub-Saharan Africa: a review. *Social Dynamics*, 28, 64-88.
- Kaiser Family Foundation. (2000). Decision-making about sex: SexSmarts. Retrieved December 17, 2008, from <http://www.kff.org/youth/hivstds/3064-index.cfm>
- Kaiser Family Foundation & South African Broadcasting Cooperation. (2007). Young South Africans, Broadcast Media, and HIV Awareness: Results of a National Survey California: Henry J. Kaiser Family Foundation.
- Kalichman, S. C. (2008). Co-occurrence of treatment non-adherence and continued HIV transmission risk behaviors: implications for positive prevention interventions. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 70(5), 593-7.
- Kalichman, S. C., Simbayi, L. C., Kaufman, M., Cain, D., & Jooste, S. (2007). Alcohol use and sexual risks for HIV/AIDS in Sub-Saharan Africa: systematic review of empirical findings. *Prevention Science*, 8, 141-151.
- Kalule-Sabiti, I., Palamuleni, M., Makiwane, M. & Amoateng, A.Y. (2007). Family formation and dissolution patterns. In A.Y. Amoateng, & T. B. Heaton (Eds.), *Families and Households in Post-Apartheid South Africa: Socio-Demographic Perspectives* (p. 89-112). Cape Town: HSRC Press
- Karofsky, P. S., L. Zeng & Kosorok, M (2000). Relationship between adolescent-parental communication and initiation of first intercourse by adolescents. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 28, 41-45.
- Kaufman, C. E., de Wet, T., & Stadler, J. (2001). Adolescent pregnancy and parenthood in South Africa. *Studies in Family Planning*, 32(2), 147-160.
- Kaufman, C. E. & Stavrou, S. E. (2004). 'Bus fare please' : the economics of sex and gifts among young people in urban South Africa. *Culture, Health & Sexuality*, 6, 377-391.
- Kaufman, C. E., Clark, S., Manzini, N., & May, J. (2004). Communities, opportunities, and adolescents' sexual behaviour in KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. *Studies in Family Planning*, 35, 261-274.
- Kearney, M. S. & Levine, P. B. (2007). *Socio-Economic Disadvantage and Early Childbearing*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: National Bureau of Economic Research.
- Kelly, K. (2000). *Communicating for Action: A Contextual Evaluation of Youth Responses to HIV/AIDS*. Pretoria: Department of Health (Sentinel Site Monitoring and Evaluation Project for the Beyond Awareness Campaign).

- Kelly, K. & Parker, P. (2000). *Communities of Practice: Contextual Mediators of Youth Response to HIV/AIDS*. Pretoria: Department of Health.
- Kiernan, K.E. (1995). *Transition to Parenthood: Young Mothers, Young Fathers – Associated Factors and Later Life Experiences*. Welfare State Programme. (Discussion paper WSP/113). London School of Economics: London.
- Kim, J. C., Watts, C. H., Hargreaves, J. R., Ndhlovu, L. X., Phetla, G., Morison, L.A. et al. (2007). Understanding the impact of a microfinance-based intervention on women's empowerment and the reduction of intimate partner violence in South Africa. *American Journal of Public Health, 97*(10), 1794-1802.
- Kincaid, D. L., Parker, W., Johnson, S., Schierhout, G., Kelly, K., Connolly, C. et al. (2008). *AIDS Communication Programmes, HIV Prevention, and Living with HIV and AIDS in South Africa, 2006*. Pretoria: JHESA.
- Kirby, D. (1997). *No Easy Answers: Research Findings on Programs to Reduce Teen Pregnancy*. Washington, D.C.: The National Campaign to Prevent Teen Pregnancy.
- Kirby, D. (2001). *Emerging Answers: Research Findings on Programs to Reduce Teen Pregnancy*. Washington, DC: The National Campaign to Prevent Teen Pregnancy.
- Kirby, D. (2002). Antecedents of adolescent initiation of sex, contraceptive use, and pregnancy. *American Journal of Health Behavior, 26*, 473-485.
- Kirby, D. (2007). *Emerging Answers 2007: Research Findings on Programs to Reduce Teen Pregnancy and Sexually Transmitted Diseases*. Washington, DC: The National Campaign to Prevent Unplanned Pregnancy.
- Kirby, D. B. (2008). The impact of abstinence and comprehensive sex and STI/HIV education programs on adolescent sexual behaviour. *Sexuality Research and Social Policy, 5*, 18-27.
- Kirby, D., Coyle, K., & Gould, J. B. (2001). Manifestations of poverty and birth rates among young teenagers in California zip code areas. *Family Planning Perspectives, 33*, 63-69.
- Kirby, D., Laris, B.A., & Roller, L.A. (2005). Impact of Sex and HIV Education Programs on Sexual Behaviours of Youth in Developing Countries (Rep. No. 2). Family Health International.
- Kirby, D. B., Laris, B.A., & Roller, L.A. (2007). Sex and HIV education programs: their impact on sexual behaviours of young people throughout the world. *Journal of Adolescent Health, 40*, 206-217.
- Kirby, D., Obasi, A., & Laris, B. (2006). The effectiveness of sex education and HIV education interventions in schools in developing countries. In D. Ross, B. Dick, & J. Ferguson (Eds.), *Preventing HIV/AIDS in Young People: A Systematic Review of the Evidence from Developing Countries*. Geneva: World Health Organization.
- Kissin, D. M., Anderson, E. J., Kraft, J. M., Warner, L. & Jamieson, D. J. (2008). Is there a trend of increased unwanted childbearing among young women in the United States? *Journal of Adolescent Health, 43*, 364-371.
- Klerman, L.V. (2004). *Another Chance: Preventing Additional Births to Teen Mothers*. Washington DC: The National Campaign to Prevent Teen Pregnancy.
- Klepinger, D. H., Lundberg, S. & Plotnick, D.R. (1995). Adolescent fertility and the educational attainment of young women. *Family Planning Perspectives 27*(1): 23-8.
- Koenig, M.A., Zablotska, I., Lutalo, T., Nalugoda, F., Wagman, J. & Gray, R. (2004). Coercive first intercourse and reproductive health among adolescent women in Rakai, Uganda. *International Family Planning Perspectives, 30*, 156-63.
- Lam D, Leibbrandt M & Mlatsheni C (2008) *Education and Youth Unemployment in South Africa*. (Working Paper No. 22). Cape Town: Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit, University of Cape Town
- Landry, D.J. & Forrest, J. D. (1995). How old are U.S. fathers. *Family Planning Perspectives, 27*(4), 159-165.
- Langille, D. B., Flowerdew, G. & Andreou, P. (2004). Teenage pregnancy in Nova Scotia communities: Associations with contextual factors. *The Canadian Journal of Human Sexuality, 13*, 83-94.
- Lansford, J. E., Miller-Johnson, S., Berlin, L. J., Dodge, K. A., Bates, J. E. & Pettit, G. S. (2007). Early physical abuse and later violent delinquency: A prospective longitudinal study. *Child Maltreatment, 12*, 233-245.
- Larson, N. C., Hussey, J. M., Gilmore, M. R., & Gilchrist, L. D. (1996). What about dad? Fathers of children born to school mothers. *Families in Society, 77*, 279-290.
- Lesch, E. & Kruger, L. (2005). Mothers, daughters and sexual agency in one low-income South African community. *Social Science and Medicine, 61*, 1072-1082.
- Limmer, M. (2008). Addressing young people's sex and alcohol use: It's about aspiration not information. *Education and Health, 26*, 38-39.
- Lloyd, C. B. & Mensch, B. S. (1999). Implications of formal schooling for girls' transition to adulthood in developing countries. In C. H. Bledsoe, J. B. Casterline, J. A. Johnson-Kuhn, & J. G. Haaga (Eds.), *Critical Perspectives on Schooling and Fertility in the Developing World* (p. 80-104). Washington, DC: National Academy Press.



- Lloyd, C. B. & Mensch, B. S. (2006). *Marriage And Childbirth as Factors in Dropping Out from School: An Analysis of DHS Data from Sub-Saharan Africa* (Rep. No. 219). New York: Population Studies.
- Lloyd, C. B. & Mesch, B. S. (2008). Marriage and childbirth as factors dropping out from school: an analysis of DHS data from sub-Saharan Africa. *Population Studies*, 62(1), 1-13.
- Lopoo, L.M. & DeLeire, T. (2006). Did welfare reform influence the fertility of young teens? *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management*, 25(2), 275-298.
- loveLife 2003. Report on activities and project. Retrieved, 25 May, 2009, from <http://www.lovelife.org.za/corporate/index.html>
- loveLife 2009. loveLife – South Africa's National HIV prevention programme for young people. Retrieved, 25 May, 2009, from <http://www.lovelife.org.za/corporate/index.html>
- loveLife 2009. Outreach and support. Retrieved 25 May, 2009, from <http://www.lovelife.org.za/corporate/index.html>
- MacPhail, C. & Campbell, C. (2001). 'I think condoms are good but, aai, I hate those things': condom use among adolescents and young people in a Southern African township. *Social Science and Medicine*, 52, 1613-1627.
- MacPhail, C., Pettifor, A. E., Pascoe, S., & Rees, H.V. (2007). Contraception use and pregnancy among 15-24 year old South African women: a nationally representative cross-sectional survey. *Bio Medical Central Medicine*, 5, 1-8.
- Madhavan, S., Townsend, N. W., & Garey, I. N. (2008). Absent Breadwinners: Father-child connections and paternal support in rural South Africa. *Journal of Southern African Studies*, 34(3), 647-663.
- Madu, S.N. & M.P. Matla, M.P. (2003). Illicit drug use, cigarette smoking and alcohol drinking behaviour among a sample of high school adolescents in the Pietersburg area of the Northern Province, South Africa. *Journal of Adolescence* 26, 121-136.
- Magnani, R., Karim, A.M., Macintyre, K., Brown, L. & Hutchinson, P. (2003). Transitions to Adulthood in the Context of AIDS in South Africa. The Impact of Exposure to Life Skills Education on Adolescent Knowledge, Skills and Behaviour. Horizons Research Summary. Washington DC: Population Council.
- Magnani, R. J., Macintyre, K., Karim, A. M., Brown, L., & Hutchinson, P. (2005). The impact of life skills education on adolescent sexual risk behaviours in KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 36, 289-304.
- Maharaj, P. (2006). Reasons for condom use among young people in KwaZulu-Natal: prevention of HIV, pregnancy or both? *International Family Planning Perspectives*, 32(1): 28-34.
- Maharaj, P., Kaufman, C. & Richter, L. (2000). Children's Schooling in South Africa: Transitions and Tensions in Households and Communities. (CSDS working paper No. 3). Durban: University of Natal, Center for Social and Development Studies.
- Makiwane, M. (1998). Adolescent pregnancy and reproductive health in Transkei (Rural South Africa). *African Journal of Reproductive Health*, 2, 41-48.
- Makiwane, M. (2007). The impact of the social grants on teenage fertility in South Africa. Manuscript submitted for publication.
- Makiwane, M. (2009). [Department of Health abortion statistics]. Unpublished raw data.
- Makiwane, M., Desmond, C., Richter, L. M. & Udjo, E. (2006). Is the Child Support Grant Associated with an Increase in Teenage Fertility in South Africa? Evidence from National Surveys and Administrative Data. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Makiwane, M. & Udjo, E. (2006). Is the Child Support Grant associated with an Increase in Teenage Fertility in South Africa? Evidence from National Surveys and Administrative Data. Pretoria: Human Sciences Research Council.
- Manlove, J. (1998). The influence of high school dropout and school disengagement on the risk of school-age pregnancy. *Journal of Research on Adolescence*, 8(2), 187-220.
- Manzini, N. (2001). Sexual initiation and childbearing among adolescent girls in KwaZulu Natal, South Africa. *Reproductive Health Matters*, 9, 44-52.
- Maphumulo, S (2009, February 13). Pupil dies after giving birth. *The Star*, p. 6.
- Mathews, C., Gutmacher, S. J., Flisher, A. J., Mtshizana, Y.Y., Nelson, T., McCarthy, J. et al. (2009). The quality of HIV testing services for adolescents in Cape Town, South Africa: Do adolescent-friendly service make a difference? *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 44, 188-190.
- Maticka-Tyndale, E. & Brouillard-Coyle, C. (2006). The effectiveness of community interventions targeting HIV and AIDS prevention at young people in developing countries. In: Preventing HIV / AIDS in Young People. A Systematic Review of the Evidence from Developing Countries. UNAIDS Inter-agency Task Team on Young People, edited by David A. Ross, Bruce Dick and Jane Ferguson. Geneva, Switzerland, World Health Organization 2006. :205-241. (WHO Technical Report Series No. 938).
- Mazibuko, L (2008, February 13). Pregnancy blues. *Sowetan*, p. 2
- McLeroy, K. R., Bibeau, D., Steckler, A., & Glanz, K. (1988). An ecological perspective on health promotion programs. *Health Education Quarterly*, 15, 351-377.

- Meade, C. S. & Ickovics, J. R. (2005). Systematic review of sexual risk among pregnant and mothering teens in the USA: Pregnancy as an opportunity for integrated prevention of STD and repeat pregnancy. *Social Science & Medicine*, 60, 661–678.
- Medical Research Council. (2008) 17 Risk factors: South African Comparative Risk Assessment - Summary Report. Pretoria: MRC.
- Melby, T. (2006). Hispanics become focus of teen pregnancy prevention efforts. *Contemporary Sexuality*, 40, 4-6.
- Miller, D. B. (1994). Influences on parental involvement of African American adolescent fathers. *Child and Adolescent Social Work*, 11(5), 363-378.
- Miller, D. B. (1997). Adolescent fathers: what we know and what we need to know. *Child and Adolescent Social Work Journal*, 14(1), 55-69.
- Miller, B. (1998). Families Matter: A Research Synthesis of Family Influences on Adolescent Pregnancy. Washington, DC: The National Campaign to Prevent Teen Pregnancy.
- Miller, B. C., Benson, B. & Galbraith, K. A. (2001). Family relationships and adolescent pregnancy risk: A research synthesis. *Developmental Review*, 21, 1–38.
- Miller, B. C. (2002). Family influences on adolescent sexual and contraceptive behaviour. *The Journal of Sex Research*, 39, 22-26.
- Ministry of Health. (1988). School Pregnancy in Kenya: A Report of a Study of Discontinuation Rates and Associated Factors. Nairobi: Ministry of Health —GTZ Support Unit.
- Miranda, A. E. & Szwarcwald, C. L. (2007). Pregnancy rate and risk behaviors among female adolescents in Vitória, Brazil. *Women & Health*, 45(3), 17-30.
- Montgomery, C. M., Hosegood, V., Busza, J., & Timaeus, I. M. (2005). Men's involvement in the South African family: engendering change in the AIDS era. *Social Science and Medicine* 62, 2411-2419.
- Morejele, N., Brook, J. S., & Kachieng'a, M. A. (2006). Perceptions of sexual risk and substance abuse among adolescents in South Africa: A qualitative investigation. *AIDS Care*, 18, 215-219.
- Morojele, N. K., Kachieng'a, M. A., Mokoko, E., Matsobane, A. N., Parry, C. D. H., Nkowane, A. M. et al. (2006). Alcohol use and sexual behaviour among risky drinkers and bar shebeen patrons in Gauteng province, South Africa. *Social Science and Medicine*, 62, 217-227.
- Morrel, R. (2007). Do you want to be a father? School-going youth in Durban schools at the turn of the 21st century. In T. Shelter, K. Ratele, A. Strelbel, N. Shabalala, & R. Buikema (Eds.), *From Boys to Men: Social Constructions of Masculinity in Contemporary Society* (p. 75-93). Cape Town: Juta and Company.
- Morrone, C., Myer, L., & Tibazarwa, K. (2006). Knowledge of the abortion legislation among South Africa women: a cross-sectional study. *Reproductive Health*, 3, 1-5.
- Mostert, W. (1991). Recent Trends in Fertility in South Africa. Pretoria: Human Sciences Research Council.
- Moultrie, T. A. & Timaeus, I. M. (2002). Trends in South African Fertility between 1970 and 1998: An Analysis of the 1996 Population Census and the 1998 Demographic and Health Survey.
- Moultrie, T. A. & Timaeus, I. M. (2003). The South African fertility decline: Evidence from two censuses and a Demographic and Health Survey. *Population Studies*, 57, 265-283.
- Moultrie, T. A. & Dorrington, R. (2004). Estimation of Fertility from the 2001 South Africa Census Data. Cape Town: Centre for Actuarial Research for Statistics South Africa.
- Moultrie, T. A. & McGrath, N. (2007). Teenage fertility rates falling in South Africa. *South African Medical Journal*, 97, 442-443.
- Mukoma, W. & Flisher, A. J. (2008). A systematic review of evaluations of school-based AIDS prevention programmes in South Africa. In K-I. Klepp, A. J. Flisher & S. Kaaya (Eds.), *Promoting Adolescent Sexual Reproductive Health in East and Southern Africa*. Uppsala: Nordiska Afrika Institutet.
- Muyinda, H., Kengeya, J., Pool, R. & Whitworth, J. (2001). Traditional sex counselling and STI/HIV prevention among young women in rural Uganda. *Culture, Health & Sexuality*, 3, 353-361.
- National Campaign to Prevent Teen Pregnancy. (2002). What Ever Happened To Childhood? The Problem of Teen Pregnancy in the United States. Washington, D.C: The National Campaign to Prevent Teenage Pregnancy.
- National Cancer Institute. (2005). Theory at a Glance. A Guide for Health Promotion Practice. 2, 1-52. US, National Cancer Institute, US Department of Health and Human Services.
- National Research Council and Institute of Medicine. (2005). Growing Up Global: The Changing Transitions to Adulthood in Developing Countries. Panel on Transitions to Adulthood in Developing Countries. Cynthia B. Lloyd, ed. Committee on Population and Board on Children, Youth and Families. Division of Behavioural and Social Sciences and Education. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press.
- Ndlovu, S (2008, May 8). Pregnant pupils expelled. *The Mercury*, p. 3.
- Newman, L (2008, May 9). Teenage pregnancy no surprise. *The Mercury*, p. 4.

- Nkuna, B (2008, September 29). Child grants used for booze-NGOs. *The Cape Argus*, p. 6.
- Olausson, P. O., Haglund, B., Weitoft, G. R., & Cnattingius, S. (2001). Teenage childbearing and long-term socioeconomic consequences: a case study in Sweden. *Family Planning Perspectives*, 33, 70-74.
- OneLove 2008. oneLove South Africa. Retrieved, 25 May, 2009, from <http://www.onelovesouthernafrica.org/index.php/countries/south-africa/>
- Palen, L., Smith, E.A., Flisher, A. J., Caldwell, L. L. & Mpfu, E. (2006). Substance use and sexual risk behaviour among South African eighth grade students. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 39, 761-763.
- Pallitto, C. C. & Murillo, V. (2008). Childhood abuse as a risk factor for adolescent pregnancy in El Salvador. *Journal of Health Research*, 42, 580-586.
- Parker, W.M. & Colvin, M. (2006). Response to Pettifor et al. 'Young people's sexual health in South Africa': HIV prevalence and sexual behaviours from a nationally representative household survey. *AIDS*, 20(6), 954-955.
- Paruk, Z., Petersen, I., Bhana, A., Berglas, M., Bell, C., & McKay, M. (2005). Containment and contagion: how to strengthen families to support youth HIV prevention in South Africa. *African Journal of AIDS Research*, 4, 57-63.
- Paruk, Z., Petersen, I., & Bhana, A. (2009). Facilitating health-enabling social contexts for youth: qualitative evaluation of a family-based HIV-prevention pilot programme. *African Journal of AIDS Research*, 8, 61-68.
- Pattman, R. (2007). Researching and working with boys and young men in Southern Africa in the context of HIV/AIDS: a radical approach. In T. Shelter, K. Ratele, A. Strelbel, N. Shabalala, & R. Buikema (Eds.), *From Boys to Men: Social Constructions of Masculinity in Contemporary Society* (pp. 33-49). Cape Town: Juta and Company Ltd.
- Pedlow, C.T. & Carey, M. P. (2004). Developmentally appropriate sexual risk reduction interventions for adolescents: rationale, review of interventions, and recommendations for research and practice. *Annals of Behavioural Medicine*, 27, 172-184.
- Perrino, T., Gonzalez, S.A., Pantin, H., and Szapocznik, J. (2000). The role of families in adolescent HIV prevention: A review. *Clinical Child and Family Psychology Review*, 3, 81-96.
- Pettifor, A. E., Rees, H.V., Steffenson, A., Hlongwa-Madikizela, L., MacPhail, C., Vermaak, K. et al. (2004). HIV and sexual behaviour among young South Africans. Johannesburg: Reproductive Health Research Unit, University of Witwatersrand.
- Pettifor, A. E., Rees, H.V., Kleinschmidt, I., Steffenson, A., MacPhail, C., Hlongwa-Madikizela, L. et al. (2005). Young people's sexual health in South Africa: HIV prevalence and sexual behaviours from a nationally representative household survey. *AIDS*, 19, 1525-1534.
- Pettifor, A. E., MacPhail, C., Bertozzi, S., & Rees, H. (2007). Challenge of evaluating a national HIV prevention programme: the case of loveLife, South Africa. *Sexually Transmitted Infections*, 83, 70-74.
- Pettifor, A. E., Levandowski, B. A., MacPhail, C., Padian, N. S., Cohen, M. S., & Rees, H.V. (2008). Keep them in school: the importance of education as a protective factor against HIV infection among young South African women. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 37, 1266-1273.
- Pevalin, D. (2003). Outcomes in Childhood and Adulthood by Mothers Age at Birth: Evidence from the 1970 British Cohort Study (ISER working papers No. 2003-31). Colchester, University of Essex: Institute for Social and Economic Research.
- Pike, L. B. & Wittstruck, G. (2000). Maltreatment and Adolescent Pregnancy and Parenting Program: A Community Awareness Model. Missouri: Center on Adolescent Sexuality, Pregnancy and Parenting.
- Pluddemann, A., Flisher, A. J., Mathews, C., Carney, T., & Lombard, C. (2008). Adolescent methamphetamine use and sexual risk behaviour in secondary school students in Cape Town, South Africa. *Drug and Alcohol Review*, 27, 687-692.
- Posel, D. & Devey, R. (2006). The demographics of fatherhood in South Africa: An Analysis of Survey Data, 1993-2002'. In L. M. Richter & R. Morrel (Eds.), *Baba* (pp. 38-52). Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Preston-Whyte, E. (1990). Qualitative perspectives on fertility trends among African teenagers. In W. P. Mostert & J. M. Litter (Eds.), *South Africa's Demographic Future*. Pretoria: Human Sciences Research Council.
- Preston-Whyte, E. & Zondi, M. (1992). African Teenage Pregnancy: Whose Problem? In S. Burman, Preston-Whyte, E (Ed.). *Questionable Issue: Illegitimacy in South Africa* (pp. 45-59). Cape Town: Oxford University Press.
- Pullum, T., Casterline, J., & Shah, I. (1987). Adapting fertility exposure analysis of the study of fertility change. *Population Studies*.
- Ratlabala, M. E., Mafokane, M. D. M., & Jali, M. N. (2007). Perceptions of adolescents in low resourced areas towards pregnancy and the choice of termination of pregnancy (CTOP). *Curationis*, 30, 26-31.
- Reddy, S. P., Panday, S., Swart, D., Jinabhai, C. C., Amosun, S. L., James, S. et al. (2003). *Umthenthe Uhlaba Usamila - The South African National Youth Risk Behaviour Survey 2002*. Cape Town: Medical Research Council.
- Rees, H., Katzenellenbogen, J., Shabodien, R., Jewkes, R., Fawcus, S., McIntyre, J, et al. (1997). The epidemiology of incomplete abortion in South Africa. *South African Medical Journal*, 87(4), 432-437.
- Reeves, J. (2007). 'Tell me your story': applied in narrative research with young fathers. *Children's Geographies*, 5(3), 253-265.

- Reproductive Rights Alliance. (1999). *Barometer*, 3.
- Republic of South Africa. (1996). Constitution of the Republic of South Africa Act, Act 108 of 1996. 108.
- Rhein, L.M., Ginsburg, K.R., Schwartz, D.F., Pinto-Martin, J.A., Zhao, H., Morgan, A.P. & Slap, G.B. (1997). Teen father participation in child rearing: family perspectives. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 21, 244-252.
- Richter, L. (1996). A Survey of Reproductive Health Issues among Urban Black Youth in South Africa (Final Report). Pretoria: Centre for Epidemiological Research in South Africa.
- Richter, L. & Morrell, R. (eds). (2006) BABA: Men and Fatherhood in South Africa. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Richter, L.M., Panday, S., Emmett T., Makiwane, M., du Toit, R., Brookes, H., Potgieter, C., Altman, M. & Makhura, M. (2005). The Status of the Youth Report 2003. Pretoria: Human Sciences Research Council.
- Richter, L. M., Norris, S.A., & Ginsburg, C. (2006). The silent truth of teenage pregnancies - Birth to Twenty cohort's next generation. *South African Medical Journal*, 96, 1-2.
- Richter, L. M. & Dawes, A. R. L. (2008). Child abuse in South Africa: rights and wrongs. *Child Abuse Review*, 17, 79-93.
- Rivara, F. P., Sweeney, P.J., & Henderson, B.F. (1987). Risk of fatherhood among black teenage males. *American Journal of Public Health*, 77(2), 203-205.
- Rocha-Silva, L., De Miranda, S., & Erasmus, R. (1996). Alcohol, Tobacco and other Drug Use among Black Youth. Pretoria: Human Sciences Research Council.
- Rogers, E. (2003). Diffusions of Innovation. (5 ed.) New York: Free Press.
- Rohleder, P. & Swartz, L. (2005). 'What I've noticed what they need is the stats': lay HIV counsellors' reports of working in a task-orientated health care system. *AIDS Care*, 17, 397-406.
- Rosenstock, I. M. (1974). Historical origins of the health belief model. *Health Education Monographs*, 2, 328-335.
- Russell, S. T. (2002). Childhood developmental risk for teen childbearing in Britain. *Journal of Research on Adolescence*, 12, 305-324.
- Rutenberg, N., Kaufman, C. E., Macintyre, K., Brown, L., & Karim, A. (2003). Pregnant or positive: Adolescent childbearing and HIV risk in KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. *Reproductive Health Matters*, 11, 122-133.
- Rutenberg, M., Kehus-Alons, C., Brown, L., Macintyre, K., Dallimore, A. & Kaufman, C. (2001). Transition to Adulthood in the Context of Aids in South Africa: Report of Wave I. Durban: School of Developmental Studies at the University of Natal
- Sadie, J. (1973). Projections of the South African Population: 1970-2020. Johannesburg.
- Sadie, J. (1978). Contemporary white population growth and its labour force implications. *Studies in Economics and Econometrics*: 4-10.
- Saewyc, E. M., Magee, L. L. & Pettingell, S. E. (2004). Teenage pregnancy and associated risk behaviours among sexually abused adolescents. *Perspectives on Sexual and Reproductive Health*, 36, 98-105.
- SAGI 2005. Khomanani Day – Pace builds, Pressure's on, Pledges flow. Retrieved, May 20, 2009, from <http://www.info.gov.za/speeches/2005/05100710151003.htm>
- Sampson, M., Lee, U., Ndlabe, A., Mac Quene, K., van Niekerk, I., Gandhi, V., Harigaya, T. & Abrahams, C. (2004). The Social and Economic Impact of South Africa's Social Security System. (EPRI Research Paper No. 37). Cape Town: Economic Policy Research Unit
- Sampson, R., Raudenbush, S. & Earls, F. (1997). Neighborhoods and violent crime: a multi-level study of collective efficacy. *Science*, 277, 918-924.
- Santelli, J. S., Ott, M.A., Lyon, M., Rogers, J., Summers, D., & Schleifer, R. (2006). Abstinence and abstinence-only education: review of U.S. policies and programs. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 38, 72-81.
- Santelli, J. S., Duberstein-Linderberg, L., Finer, L. B., & Singh, S. (2007). Explaining recent declines in adolescent pregnancy in the United States: the contribution of abstinence and improved contraceptive use. *American Journal of Public Health*, 97, 150-156.
- Santelli, J. S., Carter, M., Orr, M. & Dittus, P. (2009). Trends in sexual risk behaviours, by nonsexual risk behaviour involvement, U.S. high school students, 1991-2007. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 44(4), 372-379.
- Schindler, J. (2008). Public schooling. In A Kraak & K Press (Eds.) Human Resource Development Review 2008: Education, Employment and Skills in South Africa 2008. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council.
- Schultz, T. P. (2000). The Impact of PROGRESA on School Enrollments Washington: International Food Policy Research Institute.
- Soul City. (2009a). The Soul City Philosophy and Methodology. Retrieved 16 May, 2009, from <http://www.soulcity.org.za/about-us/institute-for-health-development/>

- Soul City. (2009b). Soul City series. Retrieved 16 May, 2009, from <http://www.soulcity.org.za/programmes/the-soul-city-series/soul-city-series/the-soul-city-series>
- Shapiro, D. & Gebreselassie, T. (2007, March). Fertility Transition in Sub-Saharan Africa: Falling and Stalling. Paper presented at the Population Association of America 2007 annual meeting, New York, New York.
- Shaw, M., Lawlor, D.A., & Najman, J. M. (2006). Teenage children of teenage mothers; psychological, behavioural and health outcomes from an Australian prospective longitudinal study. *Social Science and Medicine*, 62, 2526-2539.
- Shiner, M. (1999). Defining peer education. *Journal of Adolescence*, 22, 555-566.
- Shisana, O. & Simbayi, L. C. (Eds.) (2002). Nelson Mandela/HSRC Study of HIV/AIDS: South African National HIV Prevalence, Behavioural Risks and Mass Media: Household Survey, 2002. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council.
- Shisana, O, Rehle, T, Simbayi, L, Parker, W, Zuma, K, Bhana, A, Connolly, C, Jooste, S, Pillay, V (eds.) 2005, South African National and HIV Prevalence, HIV Incidence, Behaviour and Communication Survey, 2005. Cape Town, HSRC Press.
- Shrier, L. A., Emans, S. J., Woods, E. R. & DuRant, R. H. (1996). The association of sexual risk behaviors and problem drug behaviors in high school students. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 20, 377-383.
- Sieving, R. E., Eisenberg, M. E., Pettingel, S., & Skay, C. (2006). Friends' influence of adolescents' first sexual intercourse. *Perspectives on Sexual and Reproductive Health*, 38, 13-19.
- Silverman, J. G., Raj, A., Mucci, L. A. & Hathaway, J. E. (2001). Dating violence against adolescent girls and associated substance use, unhealthy weight control, sexual risk behaviour, pregnancy, and suicidality. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 286, 572-579.
- Simkins, C. & van Heyningen, E. (1989). Fertility, mortality and migration in the Cape Colony, 1891-1904. *International Journal of African Historical Studies*, 22 (1).
- Singh, S. & Darroch, J. (2000). Adolescent pregnancy and childbearing: levels and trends in developing countries. *Family Planning Perspectives*, 32, 14-23.
- Snyder, A. R. (no date). Teen pregnancy, rural poverty and youth well-being outcomes. Retrieved December 16, 2008, from <http://fipa.aers.psu.edu/ppt/Teen%20Pregnancy%20and%20Rural%20Poverty.ppt>
- Speake, S., Cameron, S. & Gilroy, R. (1997) Young Single, Non-Residential Fathers: Their Involvement in Fatherhood. Family Policy Studies Centre, Oxford.
- Speizer, I. S., Magnani, R. J., & Colvin, C. E. (2003). The effectiveness of adolescent reproductive health interventions in developing countries: a review of the evidence. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 33, 324-348.
- Statistics South Africa. (2005). Stages in the Life Cycle of South Africans. (Report No. 03-02-46 (2001). Pretoria: Statistics SA.
- Statistics South Africa. (2007). Labour Force Survey, September 2007. Pretoria: Statistics SA
- Statistics South Africa (2008). General Household Survey, 2007. Pretoria: Statistics SA.
- Statistics South Africa. (2008). Statistical Release Community Survey 2007., Pretoria: Statistics SA.
- Stevens-Simon, C. & Lowy, R. (1995). Teenage childbearing: An adaptive strategy for the socioeconomically disadvantaged or a strategy for adapting to socioeconomic disadvantage? *Archives of Pediatrics and Adolescent Medicine*, 149, 912-915.
- Swartz, S. & Bhana, A. (2009). Teenage Tata: Experience of Young Fathers in Impoverished Communities in South Africa. 1-169. Cape Town: HSRC.
- Tabi, M. (2002). Community perspective on a model to reduce teenage pregnancy. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, 40, 275-284.
- Taylor, D., Chavez, G., Adams, E., Chabra, A., & Shah, R. (1999). Demographic characteristics in adult paternity for first birth to adolescents under 15 years of age. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 24, 251-258.
- Temin, M. J., Okonofua, F. E., Omorodion, F. O., Renne, E. P., Coplan, P., Heggenhougen, H. K. & Kaufman, J. (1999). Perceptions of sexual behaviour and knowledge about sexually transmitted diseases among adolescents in Benin City, Nigeria. *International Family Planning Perspectives*, 25, 186-190.
- The Alan Guttmacher Institute. (2001). Can More Progress Be Made? Teenage Sexual and Reproductive Behaviour in Developed Countries. New York: Alan Guttmacher Institute.
- The Alan Guttmacher Institute. (2004). U.S. Teenage Pregnancy Statistics: Overall Trends, Trends by Race and Ethnicity and State-By-State. New York: Alan Guttmacher Institute.
- The National Center on Addiction and Substance Abuse. (1997). Substance Abuse and the American Adolescent: A Report by the Commission on Substance Abuse among American Adolescents. New York: The National Center on Addiction and Substance Abuse, Columbia University.

- Tillotson, J. & Maharaj, P. (2001). Barriers to HIV/AIDS protective behaviour among African adolescent males in township secondary schools in Durban, South Africa. *Society in Transition*, 32, 83-100.
- Turner, G. & Shepherd, J. (1999). A method in search of a theory: peer education and health promotion. *Health Education Research*, 14(2), 235-247
- Tylee, A., Haller, D. M., Graham, T., Churchill, R., & Sanci, L.A. (2007). Youth-friendly primary-care services: how are we doing and what more needs to be done. *The Lancet*, 369, 1565-1573.
- Udjo, E. (2003). A re-examination of levels and differential in fertility in South Africa from recent evidence. *Journal of Biosocial Science*, 35, 413-431.
- UNAIDS. (2004). Joint United Nations Programme on HIV/AIDS 2004, Report on the Global AIDS epidemic. Geneva: UNAIDS.
- UNFPA (2007). Giving Girls Today and Tomorrow: Breaking the Cycle of Adolescent Pregnancy. New York: UNFPA. Retrieved April 15, 2009, from [http://www.unfpa.org/upload/lib\\_pub\\_file/722\\_filename\\_adol\\_eng.pdf](http://www.unfpa.org/upload/lib_pub_file/722_filename_adol_eng.pdf)
- Unger, J. B., Molina, G. B. & Teran, L. (2000). Perceived consequences of teenage childbearing among adolescent girls in an urban sample. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 26, 205-212.
- United Nations. (2000). The Millennium Development Goals Report. New York: United Nations.
- United Nations (2008). The Millennium Development Goals Report, 2008. New York: United Nations.
- Van Der Hulst, L., Bonsel, G., Estes, M., Birnie, E., Van Teijlingen, E., & Bleker, O. (2006). Bad experience, good birthing: Dutch low risk pregnant women with a history of sexual abuse. *Journal of Psychosomatic Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 27, 59-66.
- Varga, C.A. (2002). Pregnancy termination among South African adolescents. *Studies in Family Planning*, 33, 283-298.
- Varga, C.A. (2003). How gender roles influence sexual and reproductive health among South African Adolescents. *Studies in Family Planning*, 34, 160-172.
- Ventura, S. J., Abma, J. C., Mosher, W. D., & Henshaw, S. K. (2008). Estimated pregnancy rates by outcome for the United States, 1990-2004. *National Vital Statistics Reports*, 56, 1-25. Division of Vital Statistics, Guttmacher Institute, USA
- Vikat, A., Rimpela, A., Kosunen, E. & Rimpela, M. (2002). Sociodemographic differences in the occurrence of teenage pregnancies in Finland in 1987-1998: a follow up study. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 56, 659-668.
- Visser, M. J. (2005). Life skills training as HIV/AIDS preventive strategy in secondary schools: evaluation of a large-scale implementation process. *Journal of Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS*, 2, 203-216.
- Voluntary and Service Enquiry Southern Africa. loveLife groundBREAKERS. A Summary of the Programme Assessment 2001-2005. Sandton: loveLife.
- Waldo, C. R. & Coates, T.J. (2000). Multiple levels of analysis and intervention in HIV prevention science: exemplars and directions for new research. *AIDS*, 14, S18-S26.
- Ward, C., van der Heijden, I., Mukoma, W., Phakati, S., Mhlambi, T., Pheiffer, J. et al. (2007). South Africa's Peer Education Programmes: Mapping and Outcomes Assessment. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council.
- Were, M. (2007). Determinants of teenage pregnancies: The case of Busia District in Kenya. *Economics and Human Biology*, 5, 322-339.
- Whitaker, D. J., Miller, K. S., May, D. C., & Levin, M. L. (1999). Teenage partners' communication about sexual risk and condom use: The importance of parent-teenager discussions. *Family Planning Perspectives*, 31, 117-121.
- Whitaker, D. J. & Miller, K. S. (2000). Parent-adolescent discussions about sex and condoms. *Journal of Adolescent Research*, 15, 251-273.
- Whitbeck, L., R. M. Simons, R. M. & Koa, M. (1994). The effects of divorced mothers' dating behaviors and sexual attitudes on the sexual attitudes and behaviors of their adolescent children. *Journal of Marriage and the Family*, 56, 615-621.
- Wiemann, C. M., Rickert, V. I., Berenson, A. B., & Volk, R. J. (2005). Are pregnant adolescents stigmatized by pregnancy. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 36, 352.e1-352.87.
- Wiemann, C. M., Agurcia, C. A., Rickert, V. I., Berenson, A. B., & Volk, R. J. (2006). Absent fathers as providers: race/ethnic differences in support for adolescent mothers. *Child and Adolescent Social Work*, 23, 617-634.
- Wilkinson, P., French, R., Kane, R., Lachowycz, K., Stephenson, J., Grundy, C. et al. (2006). Teenage conceptions, abortions, and births in England, 1994-2003, and the national teenage pregnancy strategy. *The Lancet*, 368, 1879-1886.
- Wilson, H.W. & Donenber, G. (2004). Quality of parent communication about sex and its relationship to risky sexual behavior among youth in psychiatric care: A pilot study. *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry*, 45, 387-395.
- Wood, K. & Jewkes, R. (1997). Violence, rape, and sexual coercion. *Gender and development*, 5, 41-46.

- Wood, K., Maepa, J. & Jewkes, R. (1997). Adolescent Sex and Contraceptive Experiences: Perspectives of Teenagers and Clinic Nurses in the Northern Province. Final project report prepared for Health Systems Trust (SA), Durban, South Africa.
- Wood, K., Maforah, F., & Jewkes, R. (1998). "He forced me to love him": putting violence on adolescent sexual health agendas. *Social Science and Medicine*, 47, 233-242.
- Wood, K. & Jewkes, R. (2006). Blood blockages and scolding nurses: barriers to adolescent contraceptive use in South Africa. *Reproductive Health Matters*, 14, 109-118.
- Woodward, L. J., Harwood, L., & Fergusson, D. M. (2001). Teenage pregnancy: cause for concern. *New Zealand Medical Journal*, 114, 301-303.
- Woolard, I., Michael, C. & Jorge, A. (2005). Analysis of the Child Support Grant: Evidence from the KwaZulu-Natal Income Dynamics Study, 1993-2004. Pretoria.
- World Bank. (2006). World Development Report: Development and the Next Generation. Washington, DC: The World Bank.
- World Health Organisation. (2002). Adolescent Friendly Health Services. An Agenda for Change. Geneva: World Health Organisation.
- World Health Organisation. (2004). Contraception in Adolescence. Issues in Adolescent Health and Development. Geneva: World Health Organisation.
- Yohalem, N., & Pittman, K. (2001). Powerful Pathways: Framing Options and Opportunities for Vulnerable Youth. Discussion paper of the Youth Transition Funders Group. Takoma Park, MD: The Forum for Youth Investment, International Youth Foundation.
- Zeck, W., Bjelic-Radicic, V., Haas, J. & I Greimel, E. (2007). Impact of adolescent pregnancy on the future life of young mothers in terms of social, familial, and educational changes. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 41, 380-388.
- Zuberi, T., Sibanda A. & Udjo, E. (2005). The Demography of South Africa. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.

## APPENDICES

### APPENDIX 1: LITERATURE SEARCH STRATEGY

DATABASE	REGION COVERED	DESCRIPTION
Ebsco Information Services: Ebscohost Web	International	Ebsco Information Services covers a range of educational, medical and psychological databases (13)
Elsevier Science Science Direct	International	ScienceDirect contains over 25% of the world's science, technology and medicine full text and bibliographic information, including over 2 000 journals from Elsevier.
ProQuest: ProQuest databases	International	The ProQuest collection consists of a range of business, educational and psychological databases (10).
NISC:African HealthLine	Africa	African HealthLine (AHA) is an electronic information resource which is an aggregation of 13 bibliographic databases from around the world. The databases are sourced worldwide and cover all aspects of health.
NISC:African Journals Online	Africa	African Journals OnLine (AJOL) is a database of journals published in Africa, covering the full range of academic disciplines.
SABINET: Sabinet Online complete list of databases	South Africa	Link to the Online Reference database which lists all Sabinet Databases (26) including South African publications, current and complete research, provincial legalisation, statutes and parliamentary bills.



## APPENDIX 2: THE HSRC 2003 STATUS OF THE YOUTH SURVEY – METHODS

### *Introduction*

This section of the report summarises the parameters for the collection of quantitative data for the survey component of the HSRC Status of Youth Survey 2003 (SYR). It details aspects of the sample design and fieldwork, including training of fieldworkers.

### *Sample design*

A self-weighting sample was designed, based on the most recent available data from Statistics South Africa. Thus, the major reporting domains of the sample were drawn so that they were proportional to that of Census 2001. Households (primary sampling units) were selected to render a national sample of 3 500 young people, representative of population group and province. The Census 2001 enumeration areas (EAs) selected by the HSRC's Surveys, Analysis, Modelling and Mapping Unit were associated with their different municipalities and plotted on a national map.

Route maps were prepared to identify each primary sample unit in the sample design within each district and in each province. These maps served as a guide for the survey teams into the correct enumeration area and to the selected households within each area.

The original sample size was 3 500. The fieldwork company targeted 3 600, so as to allow for refusals and incomplete questionnaires. Response rate to the targeted sample of 3 600 was 98.36 percent. Thus the actual response was 1.17 percent more than the design. Minority population groups were slightly over-sampled in the study but, as this is so slight, it does not change the self-weighting nature of the sample.

### *Method for random selection of the sample*

The SYR sample was drawn using the 2001 Census to estimate a number of visiting points in an EA. An EA is defined by Census 2001 to consist of a number of households, usually between 100 and 200 visiting points (VPs). A VP is defined as a residential stand, address, structure and flat in a block of flats or homestead. In order to select an individual to be interviewed, the following route was followed:

The number of individuals to be interviewed in each province was chosen such that they were proportional to the number of young people found in the province as provided by Census 2001.

The EAs were chosen according to five residential types, namely, urban formal, urban informal, rural traditional, rural farms and hostels. The number of EAs selected from each type was proportional to those defined in the Census.

VPs within each EA were chosen randomly.

If there was more than one household at a visiting point, one household was randomly selected. Within each household, if there was more than one young person within the ages 18 to 35, one person was randomly selected.

The fact that the selection of young people hinged on their availability within the household during November and December, the latter being a traditional holiday month, might have resulted in some unintended bias. For example, higher education levels were found in the sample compared to those reported in other studies and it could be that such individuals are less mobile because they have employment and were thus more likely to be selected into the SYR study.

### *Substitution of dwellings*

Interviewers were not allowed to substitute households selected for interviews except with the permission and in the presence of field supervisors who were trained in the rules for substitution. Substitution was allowed only if a selected dwelling was found to be empty, there was no eligible young person resident in the household, residents were not at home for an extended period of time or there were obvious physical dangers posed to the lives of interviewers. Refusal to be interviewed was not an acceptable reason for substitution. Where substitution of a dwelling was required, the nearest dwelling next to the original, to the right of the interviewer (when facing the entrance to the dwelling), was considered first. For this new dwelling to be chosen, it had to have a fairly similar profile as the one to be substituted. For example, in an EA with a mixture of formal and informal dwellings, an informal dwelling could not be substituted with a formal dwelling. If, for any reason, the dwelling immediately next to the interviewer on the right was not eligible, the dwelling immediately to the left of the field worker was chosen as a substitute, observing the rule of similarity.

### *Selecting eligible young people*

All eligible young people (18-35 years of age), in every household selected for interview, were identified from a brief conversation with a principal respondent in the household. Within the household, selection of one young person to be the respondent in the survey was entirely random, achieved through a blinding procedure. Only the age-group criterion (18-35 years) was used. If a potential respondent met this criterion other attributes, such as specific single age, gender or race, were not taken into account in selecting one out of all eligible young respondents. If only one person was eligible in the household, the person was interviewed and the random selection process did not apply.

### *Data quality*

Emphasis was placed on the collection of high-quality data. As a result, several measures were put in place to monitor key areas of survey data collection that are susceptible to errors. Office-based monitors and quality control specialists conducted random checks to determine the location and activities of field workers. In the course of the checking visit, they also collected and reviewed completed questionnaires for immediate corrections where errors were identified. The quality control staff also conducted random call-backs on 10 percent of the sample using an abbreviated form of the questionnaire, consisting of questions selected for quality check purposes.

### *Questionnaire development*

Concepts of youth development and transition to adulthood, as part of the life cycle approach, were adopted as the conceptual framework for

the survey. What can be found from literature on this subject as indicators of a successful transition to adulthood are, among others: completion of education, entry into the labour force, establishment of an independent household, attainment of financial independence, marriage and parenthood, civic engagement and healthy lifestyle choices. The areas of youth education, youth employment and youth civic engagements were selected as critical aspects of youth development and these topics formed the focus of the questionnaire design. The principles for questionnaire development and a draft of the questionnaire were approved by UYF. The questionnaire had six sections:

- General demographic and other background information on respondents
- Employment
- Education
- Community and civic engagement
- Health and disability
- Social development

Each section of the questionnaire consisted of questions that aimed at establishing external conditions of young people, as well as their views and attitudes on issues affecting them.

#### *Ethical considerations*

The survey followed the generally established principles regarding ethics of social research. These principles include written voluntary and informed consent by selected individuals, and the principles of anonymity and confidentiality. The proposal for the survey was submitted to the HSRC Research Ethics Committee and authorisation was given to conduct the survey.

#### *Pilot study*

A pilot study preceded data collection. The main purpose of the pilot study was to test the survey questionnaire. Three areas were visited: a suburb and a township in Pretoria, and a rural area in the Northwest Province. In all, 30 people, 10 from each area, were interviewed using the draft questionnaire. Lessons learned during the pilot study were used to refine the final version of the questionnaire. These included: avoiding repetitive questions, improving the clarity of questions and response categories, filling gaps in the questionnaire and shortening the questionnaire. Following minor and mainly layout changes, the questionnaire was finalised based on experiences from the pilot study. The questionnaire was reproduced in English but administered in different vernacular languages.

#### *Training of field workers*

The development of training manuals for field survey staff was also based on experiences gained during the pilot study. Training for field workers took place centrally at the offices of The Africa Strategic Research Corporation in Johannesburg. All members of the fieldwork team, including the team leader, regional leaders and quality control specialists attended the training. Researchers from the HSRC were also present.

All aspects of the survey, including identification of respondents and quality control, were dealt with during the training. Field interviewers were chosen on the basis of a balanced combination of racial characteristics to ensure that the sample design was effectively achieved. In view of the time constraints it was decided not to translate questionnaires from English into all eleven official languages. The field workers were trained in the correct meaning of terms used in English and their translation into the other languages using the experience gained during sample interviews in the pilot study. In addition, the interview teams were constituted in ways that represented all predominant languages spoken in each sample area. All fieldworkers were multi-lingual. Respondents were offered the choice of being interviewed in their preferred languages. However, to standardise response categories for data entry and analysis, all response options in the questionnaires were presented in English.

#### *Fieldwork*

The fieldwork commenced simultaneously in all provinces immediately after the training. Field workers worked in teams of two to three with one team leader/supervisor guiding their work. The team leaders identified EAs, used the simple random sample rule provided to them to select households and which young people were to be interviewed, and introduced the interview teams.

#### *Challenges*

The main challenge faced by the fieldwork team was pressure of time. Data collection was initially designed to commence at the beginning of October 2003 to allow for a minimum of two-and-a-half months' worth of data collection in the field. However commencement of data collection was delayed until November 2003 due to a number of logistical and practical constraints. Additionally, towards the end of November, several EAs in the sample showed significant movement of people - especially from urban to rural areas for the Christmas holidays. This put more pressure on the interview teams to complete their work as soon as possible.

However, the compressed survey time and the temporary movement of people during the holiday season were accommodated by increasing the size of the fieldwork teams in order to complete data collection on schedule. Data entry ran concurrently with data collection. An advantage of this approach is that it provided an opportunity for office editors to relay any data errors to field workers for immediate correction while they were still in the field.

Although the questions were generally found to be acceptable, respondents pointed to the sensitive nature of some personal (especially sexual) questions. However, there was no evidence of biased responses or selective non-response to these questions. Interviewers were well trained to handle these questions and the questions were strategically placed in the questionnaire to be asked when respondents were well acquainted with the objectives of the survey and relaxed with the interviewers. Respondents' comfort with the questionnaires was also increased by having women interviewers in the team interview females and male interviewers interviewing men.







**Department of Basic Education**

123 Schoeman Street  
Pretoria  
0001

**UNICEF**

6th Floor, Metro Park Building  
351 Schoeman Street  
Corner Schoeman & Prinsloo Street  
Pretoria  
South Africa